

## ◆ Key Sentence

Noun		Noun		
マイク <i>Maiku</i>	と <i>to</i>	ディック <i>Dikku</i>	(と) ( <i>to</i> )	は 学生 だ / です。 <i>wa gakusei da / desu.</i>
(Mike and Dick are students.)				

### Examples

(a) 私は英語と日本語を話す。

*Watashi wa eigo to nihongo o hanasu.*

(I speak English and Japanese.)

(b) ミルズさんは来年ドイツとフランスとスペインへ行くつもりだ。

*Miruzu-san wa rainen Doitsu to Furansu to Sipein e iku tsumori da.*

(Mr. Mills is planning to go to Germany, France and Spain next year.)

(c) ステーキはナイフとフォークで食べる。

*Sutēki wa naifu to fōku de taberu.*

(We eat steak with a knife and a fork.)

(d) 山本さんとスミスさんがテニスをしている。

*Yamamoto-san to Sumisu-san ga tenisu o shite iru.*

(Mr. Yamamoto and Mr. Smith are playing tennis.)

(e) 日本語とトルコ語は似ている。

*Nihongo to torukogo wa nite iru.*

(Japanese and Turkish are alike.)

### Notes

1. *To* is used to list things exhaustively. The final *to* is usually omitted, but the others are not. Thus, “A, B, C and D” is usually expressed as “A *to* B *to* C *to* D.”

2. *To* connects noun phrases only. Thus, it cannot be used for *and* in sentences, as seen in (1) – (3). (⇒ -*te*)

(1) \*このハンバーガーは安いといい。

\**Koko no hanbāgā wa yasui to ii.*

(Hamburgers here are cheap *and* good.)

(2) \*ウイルソンさんは日本へ行ったと木村さんに会った。

\**Uiruson-san wa Nihon e itta to Kimura-san ni atta.*

(Mr. Wilson went to Japan *and* met Mr. Kimura.)

- (3) \*春男はコンサートに行ったとゆり子は映画に行った。  
 \**Haruo wa konsāto ni itta to Yuriko wa eiga ni itta.*  
 (Haruo went to a concert and Yuriko went to a movie.)
3. “N<sub>1</sub> to N<sub>2</sub> (to N<sub>3</sub> . . .)” is a noun phrase; it can occur anywhere nouns can occur.
4. When N<sub>1</sub> to N<sub>2</sub> is used as the subject of a sentence, the sentence may be ambiguous. In Ex. (d), for example, without adequate context we cannot tell if Mr. Yamamoto and Mr. Smith are playing tennis *together*. If the predicate contains reciprocal words such as *niru* ‘resemble’, *onajida* ‘be the same’ and *kekkinsuru* ‘marry’, however, sentences with “N<sub>1</sub> to N<sub>2</sub>” in subject position are not ambiguous, as seen in Ex. (e).

### 【Related Expressions】

I. When Ex. (d) means ‘Mr. Yamamoto and Mr. Smith are playing tennis *together*’, it can be restated using *to<sup>2</sup>* ‘with’, as in [1].

- [1] a. 山本さんはスミスさんとテニスをしている。  
*Yamamoto-san wa Sumisu-san to tenisu o shite iru.*  
 (Mr. Yamamoto is playing tennis with Mr. Smith.)
- b. スミスさんは山本さんとテニスをしている。  
*Sumisu-san wa Yamamoto-san to tenisu o shite iru.*  
 (Mr. Smith is playing tennis with Mr. Yamamoto.)

Note that if the speaker states [1a] or [1b] instead of Ex. (d), he is speaking from Mr. Yamamoto’s or Mr. Smith’s viewpoint, respectively.

II. *Ya* is also used to list things, but that listing is inexhaustive. Examples:

- [2] a. ミルズさんやハリスさんが来た。  
*Miruzu-san ya Harisu-san ga kita.*  
 (Mr. Mills, Mr. Harris, and others came.)
- b. これはスプーンやフォークで食べる。  
*Kore wa supūn ya fōku de taberu.*  
 (We eat this with utensils like spoons and forks.)

III. The particle *ni* can be used to combine two or more objects that usually come as a set.

- [3] a. 每朝みそ汁に / とご飯を食べる。  
*Maiasa misoshiru ni / to gohan o taberu.*  
 (I eat *miso* soup and rice every morning.)



- b. あの人はいつも白いシャツに / と赤いチョッキを着ている。  
*Ano hito wa itsumo shiroi shatsu ni / to akai chokki o kite iru.*  
 (He is always wearing a white shirt and a red vest.)

The difference between *ni* and *to* is that *ni* always implies that one or more than one object has been added to the first object as an indispensable member of the entire set. *To*, however, does not necessarily carry that implication.

### **to<sup>2</sup> と prt.**

a particle marking the NP which maintains a reciprocal relationship with the subject of a clause

with; as; from  
 【REL. *ni<sup>4</sup>* ; *to<sup>1</sup>*】

#### ◆ Key Sentence

	Noun	と	
私 は <i>Watashi wa</i>	アンディー <i>Andi</i>	<i>to</i>	一緒に パーティー に 行った / 行きました。 <i>isshoni pāti ni itta / ikimashita.</i>
(I went to a party (together) with Andy.)			

#### Examples

- (a) トムはジョンとよくテニスをする。  
*Tomu wa Jon to yoku tenisu o suru.*  
 (Tom often plays tennis with John.)
- (b) 一郎はみどりと結婚した。  
*Ichirō wa Midori to kekkonshita.*  
 (Ichiro married Midori.)
- (c) この車は僕の車と同じです。  
*Kono kuruma wa boku no kuruma to onajidesu.*  
 (This car is the same as my car.)



(d) 日本のきゅうりはアメリカのきゅうりと少しちがいます。

*Nihon no kyūri wa Amerika no kyūri to sukoshi chigaimasu.*

(Japanese cucumbers are a little different from American ones.)

### Notes

- When Y is the subject of a clause, X *to* indicates that X and Y have a reciprocal relationship. For example, in Ex. (a), the fact that Tom often plays tennis with John necessarily means that John often plays tennis with Tom; in other words, it means that they have a reciprocal relationship. Thus, *to* often corresponds to the English ‘with’, as in ‘in the company of’. *To* also appears with such reciprocal verbs and adjectives as *kekkonsuru* ‘marry’, *kenkasuru* ‘quarrel’, *hanashiau* ‘discuss with’, *niru* ‘resemble’, *chigau* ‘differ’ and *onajida* ‘be the same’. (See Exs. (b), (c) and (d).)
- In reciprocal sentences, the subject and X in X *to* are interchangeable. For example, Ex. (b) can be restated as in (1).

(1) みどりは一郎と結婚した。

*Midori wa Ichirō to kekkonshita.*

(Midori married Ichiro.)

Ex. (b) is described from Ichiro’s point of view, while (1) is described from Midori’s point of view. (⇒ *to<sup>1</sup>*, REL. I)

### 【Related Expression】

Some reciprocal expressions take X *ni* or X *to* depending on the meaning, as in [1] and [2].

[1] a. 正男は先生と話した。

*Masao wa sensei to hanashita.*

(Masao talked *with* his teacher.)

b. 正男は先生に話した。

*Masao wa sensei ni hanashita.*

(Masao talked *to* his teacher.)

[2] a. 明は君子とぶつかった。

*Akira wa Kimiko to butsukatta.*

(Akira bumped *into* Kimiko.)

b. 明は君子にぶつかった。

*Akira wa Kimiko ni butsukatta.*

(Akira bumped *into* Kimiko.)



The difference is that *to* implies a “bidirectional” action while *ni* implies a “unidirectional” one. For example, [2a] implies that both Akira and Kimiko were moving, whereas in [2b] only Akira was moving. Thus, *to* is unacceptable in [3] because *hashira ‘post’* is immobile.

[3] 明は柱に /\*とぶつかった。

*Akira wa hashira ni /\*to butsukatta.*

(Akira bumped into a post.)

### **to<sup>3</sup> と prt.**

- { a particle which marks a quotation, sound or the manner in which s.o. / s.t. does s.t. }
- { that; with the sound of; in the manner of }

### ◆ Key Sentence

	Quotation, sound or manner adverb		
ヒルさんは 私 に 日本語 で <i>Hiru-san wa watashi ni nihongo de</i>	「こんにちは。」 “Konnichi wa.”	と <i>to</i>	言った / <i>itta</i> / 言いました。 <i>iimashita</i> .

(Mr. Hill said to me in Japanese, “Hello!”)

### Formation

(i) Quotation と  
*to*

「私 は 学生 です。」と (“I am a student.”)  
“Watashi wa gakusei desu.” *to*

私 は 学生 だと (that I am a student)  
*watashi wa gakusei da to*

(ii) Phenomime と  
to

バタバタ と (with a clattering noise)  
*batabata to*

(iii) Phenomime と  
to

ゆっくり と (slowly)  
*yukkuri to*

(iv) Psychomime と  
to

うきうき と (cheerfully)  
*ukiuki to*

### Examples

- (a) トムは日本へ行きたいと言っている。  
*Tomu wa Nihon e ikitai to itte iru.*  
(Tom says that he wants to go to Japan.)
- (b) これは十六世紀に建てられたと書いてあります。  
*Kore wa jūrokuseiki ni taterareta to kaite arimasu.*  
(It is written that this was built in the sixteenth century.)
- (c) 私はバスで行こうと思う。  
*Watashi wa basu de ikō to omou.*  
(I think I will go by bus.)
- (d) 子供達はバタバタと走り回った。  
*Kodomotachi wa batabata to hashirimawatta.*  
(Lit. The children ran around with a clattering noise.)
- (e) 真知子はしっかりと私の手をにぎった。  
*Machiko wa shikkari to watashi no te o nigitta.*  
(Machiko grabbed my hand firmly.)
- (f) ベンはむっつりと座っている。  
*Ben wa muttsuri to suwatte iru.*  
(Ben is sitting sullenly.)



### Notes

1. *To* is basically used to mark a quotation; the literal meaning of ~ *to iu* is 'say with (the sound) ~'. This use of *to*, however, has been ex-

tended further to cover indirect quotations, as in Exs. (a) and (b), and even thoughts (i.e., internal voice), as in Ex. (c). Note that in Japanese *to* is necessary for both direct and indirect quotations, as seen in KS and Ex. (a).

2. *To* is used to mark the content of such actions as *omou* ‘think; feel’, *kangaeru* ‘think (with the intellect)’, *kaku* ‘write’, *kiku* ‘hear’ and *setsumeisuru* ‘explain’.
  3. *To* is also used with phonomimes, as in Ex. (d). Again, the idea is that someone / something makes the sound marked by *to* when doing something. Note that sound symbolisms in Japanese are not children’s words. Rather, they are an important part of the Japanese vocabulary.
  4. When a sound is repeated twice like *batabata* in Ex. (d), *to* can be omitted. When a sound is not repeated, however, *to* does not drop.
- Examples :

- (1) a. 子供達はバタバタと / ø 走り回った。  
*Kodomotachi wa batabata to / ø hashirimawatta.*  
 (Lit. The children ran around with a clattering noise.)
- b. 正男はバタンと / \*ø ドアを閉めた。  
*Masao wa batan to / \*ø doa o shimeta.*  
 (Masao slammed the door (lit. closed the door with a bang).)

5. The use of *to* with phonomimes is extended to phenomimes and psychomimes, as in Exs. (e) and (f), though these are not representations of actual sounds.

(⇒ Characteristics of Japanese Grammar, 8. Sound Symbolisms)



### ***to<sup>4</sup>* と conj.**

a subordinate conjunction which marks a condition that brings about an noncontrollable event or state

if; when  
 [REL. *tara* (*ba, nara*); *toki*]

## ◆ Key Sentence

Sentence <sub>1</sub> (informal, nonpast)		Sentence <sub>2</sub>
ニューヨーク 行く <i>Nyūyōku ni iku</i>	と <i>to</i>	おもしろい 店 が たくさん ある / あります。 <i>omoshiroi mise ga takusan aru / arimasu.</i>
(If you go to New York, there are many interesting shops.)		

### Formation

{V / Adj (i / na) / N + Copula} inf·nonpast と  
to

話す と (if s.o. talks)

*hanasu to*

高い と (if s.t. is expensive)

*takai to*

静かだ と (if s.t. is quiet)

*shizukada to*

先生 だと (if s.o. is a teacher)

*sensei da to*

### Examples

(a) それは先生に聞くとすぐ分かった。

*Sore wa sensei ni kiku to sugu wakatta.*

(I understood it immediately when I asked my teacher.)

(b) タイヤは古いとあぶないですよ。

*Taiya wa furui to abunaidesu yo.*

(Tires are dangerous if they are old.)

(c) 魚がきらいだと日本へ行った時困りますか？

*Sakana ga kiraida to Nihon e itta toki komarimasu ka?*

(If you don't like fish, will you have trouble when you go to Japan?)

(d) 学生だと割引があります。

*Gakusei da to waribiki ga arimasu.*

(If you are a student, there is a discount.)



### Notes

1. In S<sub>1</sub> to S<sub>2</sub>, S<sub>1</sub> must be nonpast even if it expresses a past event or action, as in Ex. (a). Tense is expressed in S<sub>2</sub>.

2. In  $S_1$  *to*  $S_2$ ,  $S_2$  cannot be a command, a request, a suggestion, an invitation or a volitional sentence. The following sentences are all ungrammatical.

(1) 仕事が早く終わると私のうちに

*Shigoto ga hayaku owaru to watashi no  
uchi ni*

- |    |                                   |
|----|-----------------------------------|
| a. | *来なさい。<br>*kinasai.               |
| b. | *来てください。<br>*kite kudasai.        |
| c. | *来たらどうですか。<br>*kitara dō desu ka. |
| d. | *来ませんか。<br>*kimasen ka.           |

(If you finish your work early,

- |    |   |
|----|---|
| a. | come to my place.                       |
| b. | please come to my place.                |
| c. | why don't you come to my place?         |
| d. | wouldn't you like to come to my place?) |

(2) \*仕事が早く終わるとおうちにおうかがいします。

\**Shigoto ga hayaku owaru to o-uchi ni o-ukagai shimasu.*

(If I finish my work early, I'll visit your place.)

(For the correct structures, see *tara*, Note 4.)

### ★ Semantic Derivations of *To*

***to* 'with'**

<Accompaniment> *to*<sup>2</sup>:

太郎は花子と踊った。

*Tarō wa Hanako to odotta.*

(Taro danced with Hanako.)

<Reciprocal relationship> *to*<sup>2</sup>:

これはあれと同じだ。

*Kore wa are to onajida.*

(This is the same as that.)

〈Exhaustive listing〉 **to<sup>1</sup>**:

僕は刺身とてんぷらを食べた。

*Boku wa sashimi to tenpura o tabeta.*

(I ate *sashimi* and *tempura*.)

〈Direct quotation〉 **to<sup>3</sup>**:

トムは「こんにちは。」と言った。

*Tomu wa "Konnichi wa." to itta.*

(Tom said, "Konnichi wa.")

〈Indirect quotation〉 **to<sup>3</sup>**:

トムは学生だと言った。

*Tomu wa gakusei da to itta.*

(Tom said that he was a student.)

〈Thought〉 **to<sup>3</sup>**:

一郎は大丈夫だと思った。

*Ichirō wa daijōbuda to omotta.*

(Ichiro thought that there would be no problem.)

〈Sound symbolism〉 **to<sup>3</sup>**:

太郎はバタバタと走った。

*Tarō wa batabata to hashitta.*

(Taro ran with a clattering sound.)

〈Manner of action〉 **to<sup>3</sup>**:

花子はじっと待っていた。

*Hanako wa jitto matte ita.*

(Hanako was waiting quietly.)

〈Condition of noncontrollable occurrence〉 **to<sup>4</sup>**:

ニューヨークへ行くといいレストランがある。

*Nyūyōku e iku to ii resutoran ga aru.*

(If you go to New York, there are good restaurants.)



**~*to ieba* ~と言えば phr.**

an expression which presents as  
the topic of a following discourse a  
phrase which has just been uttered

Speaking of ~  
【REL. *ttara*; *tte*】

**◆ Key Sentence****A:**

この本は田中さんに借りたんです。

*Kono hon wa Tanaka-san ni karita n desu.*

(I borrowed this book from Mr. Tanaka.)

**B:**

田中さん <i>Tanaka-san</i>	と言えば <i>to ieba</i>	もう病気は治ったのかしら。 <i>mō byōki wa naotta no kashira.</i>
---------------------------	------------------------	--

(Speaking of Mr. Tanaka, I wonder if he's gotten over his illness yet.)

**Examples**

(a) A: 次の日曜日は京都へ行くつもりだ。

*Tsugi no nichiyōbi wa Kyōto e iku tsumori da.*

(I'm going to Kyoto next Sunday.)

B: 京都と言えば、春子が京都大学の入学試験に通ったそうだ。

*Kyōto to ieba, Haruko ga Kyōtodaigaku no nyūgakushiken ni tōtta sōda.*

(Speaking of Kyoto, I heard that Haruko passed Kyoto University's entrance exam.)

(b) A: 小西君はよく休むねえ。

*Konishi-kun wa yoku yasumu nē.*

(Mr. Konishi is absent frequently, isn't he?)

B: よく休むと言えば、山本君も最近見ませんね。

*Yoku yasumu to ieba, Yamamoto-kun mo saikin mimasen ne.*

(Talking about (someone's) frequent absences, we don't see Mr. Yamamoto these days either, do we?)

**Notes**

1. *To ieba* literally means 'if you say that ~', but it is used as a topic

presentation expression meaning 'speaking of'.

2. Usually a noun phrase is presented by *to ieba*, but any sentence element is possible. For example, in Ex. (b), a verb phrase is presented.
3. The informal form of *to ieba* is *tte ieba*.

### **[Related Expressions]**

There are several other expressions used to present topics.

- I. *Ttara* is the abbreviation for *to kitara* or *to ittara* and is used to present noun phrase topics in informal conversation. It is more emphatic than the topic marker *wa* and sometimes means something like 'when it comes to ~' or 'in the case of ~'. Example:

[1] よし江ったら私には何も言わないのよ。

*Yoshie ttara watashi ni wa nani mo iwanai no yo.*

(Yoshie didn't tell me anything, you know.)

- II. *Tte*, the abbreviation for *to iu to* 'when you say ~', or *to iu no wa* 'what you say (or call) ~', is also used to present topics in informal conversation. Like *to ieba* any sentence element can precede *tte*, and that element is usually a part of the conversation partner's previous utterance. Examples:

[2] A : シービーを買いましたよ。

*Shibi o kaimashita yo.*

(I bought a CB.)

B : シービーって?

*Shibi tte?*

((What do you mean by what you call) a CB?)

[3] A : 来週から英語を教えるんです。

*Raishū kara eigo o oshieru n desu.*

(I'm teaching English from next week.)

B : 英語を教えるって, だれに?

*Eigo o oshierutte, dare ni?*

(Teaching English? To whom?)



## ~to iu ~という phr.

a phrase marking information which identifies or explains the noun following the phrase

called; that says ~ ; that

## ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

		Noun	
「雪国」 "Yukiguni"	といふ <i>to iu</i>	小説 <i>shōsetsu</i>	を 読んだ / 読みました。 <i>o yonda / yomimashita.</i>
(I read a novel called <i>Snow Country</i> .)			

(B)

Message		Noun	
山田さん が 入院した <i>Yamada-san ga nyūinshita</i>	といふ <i>to iu</i>	知らせ <i>shirase</i>	を 聞いた / 聞きました。 <i>o kiita / kikimashita.</i>
(I heard the news that Mr. Yamada has been hospitalized.)			

(C)

		Noun	
もっと がんばらなくて は(ならない) <i>Motto ganbaranakute wa (narainai)</i>	といふ <i>to iu</i>	気持ち <i>kimochi</i>	がある / あります。 <i>ga aru / arimasu.</i>
(I have the feeling that I have to keep hanging in there.)			

**Examples**

(a) 「七人の侍」という映画を見たことがありますか。

"Shichinin no samurai" *to iu eiga o mita koto ga arimasu ka.*(Have you ever seen the film called *Seven Samurai*?)

(b) ジューンが日本へ行くという話は本当ですか。

*Jūn ga Nihon e iku to iu hanashi wa hontō desu ka.*

(Lit. Is the story that June is going to Japan true? (=Is it true that June is going to Japan?))

- (c) その人に会いたくないという気持ちはよく分かります。  
*Sono hito ni aitakunai to iu kimochi wa yoku wakarimasu.*  
(I am well aware of your feeling that you don't want to see him.)
- (d) 友達が今日来るということをすっかり忘れていた。  
*Tomodachi ga kyō kuru to iu koto o sukkari wasurete ita.*  
(I completely forgot the fact that my friend is coming today.)

**Notes**

1. *To iu* is a combination of the quote marker *to* and *iu* ‘call, say’.  
( $\Rightarrow$  **to**<sup>3</sup>)
2. The head noun in KS(B) is a noun of communication, such as *hanashi* ‘story’, *nyūsu* ‘news’, *shirase* ‘information’, *tegami* ‘letter’ and *uwasa* ‘rumor’. The head noun in KS(C) is a noun of human emotion, such as *kanashimi* ‘sadness’, *kanji* ‘feeling’, *ki* ‘feeling’, *kimochi* ‘feeling’, *osore* ‘fear’ and *yorokobi* ‘joy’.
3. *To iu* is optional if the preceding element is not a noun or a clause which represents a quotation, as in KS(C) and Exs. (c) and (d).
4. When *to iu* is used at the end of a sentence, it means *hearsay* (“I heard that ~, They say ~, It is said that ~”). The sentence-final *to iu* is used only in written Japanese, as in (1).  
( $\Rightarrow$  **soda**<sup>1</sup>)
  - (1) 学生の話によると吉田先生は教え方が非常に上手だという。  
*Gakusei no hanashi ni yoru to Yoshida-sensei wa oshiekata ga hijōni jōzuda to iu.*  
(According to the students, Prof. Yoshida's teaching method is very skillful.)



**toka とか conj.**

a conjunction that lists two or more items, actions or states as inexhaustive examples

and; or  
【REL. *tari*; *ya*】

## ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)	Noun		Noun		Noun
私 <i>Watashi</i>	は <i>wa</i>	バッハ <i>Bahha</i>	とか <i>toka</i>	モーツアルト <i>Mōtsuaruto</i>	とか <i>toka</i>
が 好きだ / 好きです。 <i>ga sukida / sukidesu.</i>					
(I like Bach, Mozart and Beethoven, among others.)					

(B)

	Sentence		Sentence		
疲れた 時 は <i>Tsukareta toki wa</i>	お風呂 に入る <i>o-furo ni hairu</i>	とか <i>toka</i>	早く 寝る <i>hayaku neru</i>	とか <i>toka</i>	しなさい。 <i>shinasai.</i>
(When you are tired, do things like taking a bath or going to sleep early.)					

**Formation**

KS(A):

N とか N とか...  
*toka        toka...*

学生 とか 先生 とか... (students and teachers... (among others))  
*gakusei toka sensei toka...*

KS(B):

Sinf とか Sinf とか する  
*toka              toka suru*

テレビ を 見る とか 本 を 読む とか する (do such things as watching TV or reading books)  
*terebi o miru toka hon o yomu toka suru*



**Examples**

- (a) 日本の茶道とか生け花とかいうものをよく知らない。  
*Nihon no sadō toka ikebana toka iu mono o yoku shiranai.*  
(I don't know much about things like the Japanese tea ceremony and flower arranging.)
- (b) A : どんな日本の映画を見ましたか。  
*Donna Nihon no eiga o mimashita ka.*  
(What kind of Japanese movie did you see?)
- B : 黒沢の「七人の侍」とか「生きる」とか「影武者」を見ました。  
*Kurosawa no "Shichinin no Samurai" toka "Ikiru" toka "Kagemusha" o mimashita.*  
(I saw Kurosawa's *Seven Samurai*, *Ikiru* and *Kagemusha*.)
- (c) A : 日曜日にはどんなことをしていますか。  
*Nichiyōbi ni wa donna koto o shite imasu ka.*  
(What sorts of things do you do on Sundays?)
- B : 音楽を聞くとか、本を読むとかしています。  
*Ongaku o kiku toka, hon o yomu toka shite imasu.*  
(I do things like listening to music or reading books.)

**Notes**

1. The conjunction *toka* is a combination of the quote marker *to*<sup>3</sup> and *ka*<sup>1</sup>. That is why *toka* is often followed by the verb *iu* 'say', as in Ex. (a). When *toka* is followed by *iu*, as in (1), it is not a conjunction; it is a quote marker. The *ka* indicates the speaker's uncertainty about the quoted report.

- (1) 佐藤さんは忙しくて行けないとか言っていた。

*Satō-san wa isogashikute ikenai to ka itte ita.*

(Mr. Sato was saying he can't go there because he's busy or something.)

2.  $N_1 \text{ to } ka \text{ iu } N_2$  meaning ' $N_2$  that is called  $N_1$  or something like that' is another example of *toka* used in the above sense.

- (2) 野口とかいう人が来た。

*Noguchi to ka iu hito ga kita.*

(A person named Noguchi or something like that showed up.)



3. S *toka* S *toka suru* is used when a statement refers to something in general rather than to something specific. Thus, this structure is inappropriate in (3). (See Related Expression.)

(3) A : ニューヨークではどんなことをしましたか。

*Nyūyōku de wa donna koto o shimashita ka.*

(What sort of things did you do in New York?)

B : \*ミュージカルを見るとか美術館に行くとかしました。

\**Myūjikaru o miru toka bijutsukan ni iku toka shimashita.*

(I did things like watching musicals and visiting art museums.)

#### 【Related Expression】

～*tari* ～*tari suru*, like S *toka* S *toka suru*, indicates an inexhaustive listing of examples. It differs from S *toka* S *toka suru*, however, in that it can be used in both general and specific statements. As noted in Note 3, the *toka* construction can only be used in general statements. Thus, the grammatical version of (3B) is [1].

[1] ミュージカルを見たり美術館に行ったりしました。

*Myūjikaru o mitari bijutsukan ni ittari shimashita.*

When ～*tari* ～*tari suru* indicates alternative actions or states, it cannot be replaced by *toka*.

[2] 子供が部屋を出たり / \*出るとか 入ったり / \*入るとかしている。

*Kodomo ga heya o detari / \*deru toka haittari / \*hairu toka shite iru.*

(A child is going in and out of the room.)



#### **toki 時 n.**

a dependent noun which indicates the time when s.o. / s.t. will do / does / did s.t. or the time when s.o. / s.t. will be / is / was in some state

at the time when; when  
【REL. ~*tara*; *to*<sup>4</sup>】

## ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)	Subordinate Clause (informal)†			Predicate
私 は Watashi wa	日本 に いた <b>Nihon ni ita</b>	時 (に) toki (ni)	お茶 を 習った / 習いました。 <i>o-cha o naratta / naraimashita.</i>	
(I learned the tea ceremony when I was in Japan.)				

†*Da* after Adj (*na*) stem and N changes to *na* and *no*, respectively.

(B)

Topic (subject)	Noun			Predicate
ひろし は Hiroshi wa	試験 の <b>shiken no</b>	時 (に) toki (ni)	かぜ を ひいた / ひきました。 <i>kaze o hiita / hikimashita.</i>	
(Hiroshi caught cold at exam time.)				

### Formation

(i) {V / Adj (*i*)} inf 時  
toki

{話す / 話した} 時 (when s.o. talks / talked)  
{hanasu / hanashita} toki

{高い / 高かった} 時 (when s.t. is / was expensive)  
{takai / takakatta} toki

(ii) Adj (*na*) stem {な / だった} 時  
{na / datta} toki

{静かな / 静かだった} 時 (when s.t. is / was quiet)  
{shizukana / shizukadatta} toki

(iii) N {の / だった} 時  
{no / datta} toki

{先生 の / 先生 だった} 時 (when s.o. is / was a teacher)  
{sensei no / sensei datta} toki



### Examples

(a) 松本さんは朝ご飯を食べる時いつもテレビを見る。

*Matsumoto-san wa asagohan o taberu toki itsumo terebi o miru.*

(Mr. Matsumoto always watches TV when he eats his breakfast.)

- (b) テリーはジュースが安い時にたくさん買っておいた。  
*Teri wa jūsu ga yasui toki ni takusan katte oita.*  
 (Terry bought a lot of juice when it was cheap.)
- (c) 僕は静かな時しか本を読まない。  
*Boku wa shizukana toki shika hon o yomanai.*  
 (I read only when it's quiet.)
- (d) 私が大学生だった時妹はまだ三つだった。  
*Watashi ga daigakusei datta toki imōto wa mada mittsu datta.*  
 (When I was a college student, my sister was only three.)
- (e) これは出発の時にわたしします。  
*Kore wa shuppatsu no toki ni watashimasu.*  
 (I'll give this to you when you leave (lit. at the time of your departure).)

### Notes

1. *Toki*, by itself, means ‘time’, but when it is used as a dependent noun with a modifying phrase or clause, it means ‘at the time when’ or ‘when’.
2. The clause preceding *toki* is a type of relative clause; therefore, the basic rules for relative clauses apply to this construction. (⇒ Relative Clause) The following two rules are particularly important:
  - (A) If the subject of the *toki* clause is different from that of the main clause, it is marked by *ga*. Compare (1) with KS(A):
    - (1) メアリーは私が日本にいた時フランスにいた。  
*Meari wa watashi **ga** Nihon ni ita toki Furansu ni ita.*  
 (Mary was in France while I was in Japan.)
  - (B) The predicate form is usually informal except that *da* after Adj (*na*) stem and N changes to *na* and *no*, respectively.
3. The particle *ni* after *toki* is optional. With *ni*, time is emphasized and sometimes comes under focus. Compare the two sentences in (2).
  - (2) a. 私は学生の時よく勉強した。  
*Watashi wa gakusei no toki yoku benkyōshita.*  
 (I studied hard when I was a student.)
  - b. 私は学生の時によく勉強した。  
*Watashi wa gakusei no toki **ni** yoku benkyōshita.*  
 (It was when I was a student that I studied hard.)

4. If  $S_2$  in  $S_1 \text{ toki } S_2$  is in the past tense and  $S_1$  expresses a state, the tense of  $S_1$  can be either past or nonpast, as in (3).

- (3) a. 私は日本にいる / いた時田中先生に会った。  
*Watashi wa Nihon ni iru / ita toki Tanaka-sensei ni atta.*  
(I met Prof. Tanaka when I was in Japan.)
- b. 肉が高い / 高かった時は魚も高かった。  
*Niku ga takai / takakatta toki wa sakana mo takakatta.*  
(When meat was expensive, fish was expensive, too.)

5. When  $S_1$  in  $S_1 \text{ toki } S_2$  expresses an action, the meaning of the sentence changes depending on the tenses of  $S_1$  and  $S_2$ .

- (A) When the verb in  $S_1$  is not a movement verb :

- (4) a. 私はご飯を食べる時手を洗う。  
*Watashi wa gohan o taberu toki te o arau.*  
(I (will) wash my hands (right) before I eat my meal.)
- b. 私はご飯を食べた時手を洗う。  
*Watashi wa gohan o tabeta toki te o arau.*  
(I (will) wash my hands (right) after I've eaten my meal.)
- c. 私はご飯を食べる時手を洗った。  
*Watashi wa gohan o taberu toki te o aratta.*  
(I washed my hands (right) before I ate my meal.)
- d. 私はご飯を食べた時手を洗った。  
*Watashi wa gohan o tabeta toki te o aratta.*  
(I washed my hands (right) after I ate my meal.)

- (B) When the verb in  $S_1$  is a movement verb :

- (5) a. 私はシカゴへ行く時すしを食べるつもりだ。  
*Watashi wa Shikago e iku toki sushi o taberu tsu-mori da.*  
(I'm going to eat *sushi* (A) (right) before I leave for Chicago. / (B) on the way to Chicago.)
- b. 私はシカゴへ行った時すしを食べるつもりだ。  
*Watashi wa Shikago e itta toki sushi o taberu tsu-mori da.*  
(I'm going to eat *sushi* after I've arrived in Chicago.)
- c. 私はシカゴへ行く時すしを食べた。  
*Watashi wa Shikago e iku toki sushi o tabeta.*



((A) I ate *sushi* (right) before I left for Chicago. (B) I ate *sushi* on the way to Chicago.)

- d. 私はシカゴへ行った時すしを食べた。

*Watashi wa Shikago e itta toki sushi o tabeta.*

(I ate *sushi* after I arrived in Chicago.)

(C) When the action in S<sub>1</sub> and the action in S<sub>2</sub> take place simultaneously or concurrently:

- (6) a. 私はシカゴへ行く時車で行く。

*Watashi wa Shikago e iku toki kuruma de iku.*

(When I go to Chicago, I go by car.)

- b. \*私はシカゴへ行った時車で行く。

\**Watashi wa Shikago e itta toki kuruma de iku.*

- c. 私はシカゴへ行く時車で行った。

*Watashi wa Shikago e iku toki kuruma de itta.*

(When I went to Chicago, I went by car.)

- d. 私はシカゴへ行った時車で行った。

*Watashi wa Shikago e itta toki kuruma de itta.*

(When I went to Chicago, I went by car.)

### **[Related Expressions]**

Unlike when-clauses in English, *toki*-clauses do not indicate condition. In other words, *toki*-clauses are genuine time clauses. In order to indicate condition as expressed in when-clauses, conjunctions like *~tara* and *to* are used. ( $\Rightarrow \sim tara$ ; *to*<sup>4</sup>) Thus, if [1] expresses a condition which causes the hearer surprise, *toki* cannot be used.

[1] You will be surprised when you see it.

In this case, *tara* or *to* must be used, as in [2].

[2] それを{見たら / 見ると / \*見る時 / \*見た時}おどろきますよ。

*Sore o {mitara / miru to / \*miru toki / \*mita toki} odorokimasu yo.*

(You'll be surprised when you see it.)

**tokoro da<sup>1</sup> ところだ phr.**

A place is in a location which takes a certain amount of time to get to.

~ is (in) a place where it takes  
~ to get to

**◆ Key Sentence**

Topic (subject)	Noun (location)		Means	Noun (duration)	
私 の うち <i>Watashi no uchi</i>	は <i>wa</i>	駅 <i>eki</i>	から <i>kara</i>	歩いて <i>aruite</i>	十分 <i>juppun</i>
ところ だ / です。					
tokoro da / desu.					
(Lit. My house is in a place where it takes ten minutes to get to from the station on foot. (=On foot my house is ten minutes from the station.))					

**Examples**

(a) 学校はうちからバスで三十分のところです。

*Gakkō wa uchi kara basu de sanjuppun no tokoro desu.*

(Lit. My school is in a place where it takes thirty minutes to get to from home by bus. (=By bus it takes thirty minutes to get from home to school.))

(b) その病院はここから車で十五分のところだ。

*Sono byōin wa koko kara kuruma de jūgofun no tokoro da.*

(Lit. The hospital is in a place where it takes fifteen minutes to get to from here by car. (=By car the hospital is fifteen minutes from here.))

**Notes**

*Tokoro da* is a simplified form of *tokoro ni aru* ‘be located in a place (where).’ This expression can be simplified even more, as seen in (1).

(1) 学校はうちからバスで三十分(のところ)だ。

*Gakkō wa uchi kara basu de sanjuppun (no tokoro) da.*

(By bus my school is thirty minutes from home.)



**tokoro da<sup>2</sup> ところだ phr.**

S.o. / s.t. is in the state where he / it  
is just about to do s.t., is doing s.t.,  
has done s.t., or has been doing s.t.

be just about to do s.t.; be in  
the midst of doing s.t.; have  
just done s.t.; have been doing  
s.t.; almost did s.t.

【REL. *bakari*; *toki*】

## ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Vinf·nonpast		
春江 <i>Harue</i>	は <i>wa</i>	晩ご飯 を <i>bangohan o</i>	食べる <i>taberu</i>	ところ <i>tokoro</i> だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>
(Harue is just about to eat her supper.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Vte				
春江 <i>Harue</i>	は <i>wa</i>	晩ご飯 を <i>bangohan o</i>	食べて <i>tabete</i>	いる <i>iru</i>	ところ <i>tokoro</i>	だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>
(Harue is in the midst of eating her supper.)						

(C)

Topic (subject)		Vinf·past				
春江 <i>Harue</i>	は <i>wa</i>	晩ご飯 を <i>bangohan o</i>	食べた <i>tabeta</i>	ところ <i>tokoro</i>	だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>	
(Harue has just eaten her supper.)						

(D)

Topic (subject)		Vte				
春江 <i>Harue</i>	は <i>wa</i>	晩ご飯 を <i>bangohan o</i>	食べて <i>tabete</i>	いた <i>ita</i>	ところ <i>tokoro</i>	だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>
(Harue has been eating her supper.)						



(E)

Topic (subject)				Vinf·nonpast		
私 Watashi	は wa	もう 少し で 宿題 を <i>mō sukoshi de shukudai o</i>		忘れる wasureru	ところ tokoro	だった / <i>datta /</i> でした。 <i>deshita.</i>
(I almost forgot (lit. was about to forget) my homework.)						

(F)

Topic (subject)	Adj ( <i>i</i> / <i>na</i> )		Prt			
私 Watashi	は wa	あぶない <i>abunai</i>	ところ tokoro	を o	ジーンに 助けて もらった / <i>Jin ni tasukete moratta /</i> もらいました。 <i>moraimashita.</i>	
(I was saved by Gene when I was in a crisis (lit. dangerous state).)						

(G)

Noun			Prt			
お仕事中 <i>O-shigotochū</i>	の <i>no</i>	ところ tokoro	を o	すみません。 <i>sumimasen.</i>		
(I'm sorry to bother you in the midst of your work.)						

**Formation**(i) Vinf ところ だ  
*tokoro da*{話す / 話した} ところ だ (be just about to talk / have just talked)  
{*hanasu / hanashita*} *tokoro da*{食べる / 食べた} ところ だ (be about to eat / have just eaten)  
{*taberu / tabeta*} *tokoro da*(ii) Vte {いる / いた} ところ だ  
*{iru / ita} tokoro da*{話して いる / 話して いた} ところ だ (be in the midst of talking / have been talking)  
{*hanashite iru / hanashite ita*} *tokoro da*

{食べて いる / 食べて いた} ところ だ      (be in the midst of eating /  
 {tabete iru / tabete ita}    *tokoro da*      have been eating)

(iii) Adj (i) inf·nonpast ところ  
*tokoro*

忙しい ところ      (the state in which s.o. is busy)  
*isogashii tokoro*

(iv) Adj (na) stem な ところ  
*na tokoro*

大事な ところ      (the state in which s.t. is important)  
*daijina tokoro*

(v) N の ところ  
*no tokoro*

休み の ところ      (the state in which s.o. is off duty / on vacation)  
*yasumi no tokoro*

### Examples

(a) 僕は今出かけるところです。

*Boku wa ima dekakeru tokoro desu.*

(I'm just about to go out now.)

(b) テリーと踊っているところをマーサに見られてしまった。

*Teri to odotte iru tokoro o Māsa ni mirarete shimatta.*

(Lit. The state in which I was dancing with Terry was seen by Martha.

(=Martha saw me when I was dancing with Terry.))

(c) ご飯を食べ終わったところにまり子がたずねて來た。

*Gohan o tabeowatta tokoro ni Mariko ga tazunete kita.*

(Lit. Mariko came (to see me) at the state in which I had just finished my meal. (=Mariko came to see me when I'd just finished my meal.))

(d) 三章まで読んだところで寝てしまった。

*Sanshō made yonda tokoro de nete shimatta.*

(I fell asleep when I had read up to the third chapter (lit. in the state in which I had read it up to the third chapter).)

(e) 私はあぶなくおぼれるところだった。

*Watashi wa abunaku oboreru tokoro datta.*

(I was almost drowned.)

- (f) お忙しいところをどうもありがとうございました。  
*O-isogashii tokoro o dōmo arigatō gozaimashita.*  
 (Lit. Thank you very much (for helping me) in the state when you are busy. (=Thank you very much for sparing your precious time with me.))
- (g) 利男は一番大事なところでよく勉強しなかったから何も分からなくなってしまった。  
*Toshio wa ichiban daijina tokoro de yoku benkyōshinakatta kara nani mo wakaranaku natte shimatta.*  
 (Lit. Toshio has come to the point of not understanding anything because he didn't study well in the state where (the class) was the most important. (=Toshio has gotten totally lost because he didn't study hard when it was most important.))
- (h) お休みのところをすみません。  
*O-yasumi no tokoro o sumimasen.*  
 (Lit. I'm sorry (to disturb) the state in which you are off duty. (=I'm sorry to bother you when you are off duty / on vacation.))

**Notes**

1. *Tokoro* itself means ‘place’, but it can also mean ‘state’ or ‘time’ when it is used with a modifying verb, adjective or noun.
2. As seen in KS(A) – KS(D), verbs which precede *tokoro* are either past or nonpast and either progressive or non-progressive, and each one of the four verb forms expresses a different aspect of the action.
3. As seen in KS(E), when the preceding verb is nonpast and non-progressive and the following copula is in the past tense, the sentence may mean ‘someone or something almost did something.’ (The literal meaning is ‘someone or something was about to do something.’) When *tokoro datta* means ‘almost did something’, such adverbs as *mō sukoshi de* ‘just by a little’ and *abunaku* ‘nearly’ are often used also, as in KS(E) and Ex. (e).
4. *Tokoro* can be followed by either the copula, as in KS(A) – KS(E), Exs. (a) and (e), or such particles as *o*, *ni*, *e* and *de*, as in KS(F) and KS(G), Exs. (b) – (d) and (f) – (h).
5. When adjectives or nouns with *no* precede *tokoro*, *tokoro* is usually followed by a particle rather than the copula, as in Exs. (f) and (h). The following sentences are ungrammatical:



- (1) a. \*私は今忙しいところです。  
     \*Watashi wa ima isogashii tokoro desu.
- b. \*私は今休みのところです。  
     \*Watashi wa ima yasumi no tokoro desu.

### 【Related Expressions】

I. When *tokoro* is used as a dependent noun, its function appears to be similar to that of *toki*. However, these two expressions are different in that *tokoro* basically indicates a state, while *toki* indicates a time. Thus, [1] makes sense by itself, but [2] does not.

- [1] 僕は電話をかけるところだ。  
*Boku wa denwa o kakeru tokoro da.*  
 (Lit. I'm in the state where I'm going to place a call. (=I'm just about to call someone.))
- [2] \*僕は電話をかける時だ。  
 \**Boku wa denwa o kakeru toki da.*  
 (\*I am when I'm going to place a call.)

II. *Vte iru / ita tokoro da* is similar to *Vte iru / ita*. The difference is that the former focuses more on the state or the scene while the latter concentrates on the action. Compare the usages of the two expressions in [3] and [4].

- [3] あ、ジョンが走っている / \*走っているところだ。  
*A, Jon ga hashitte iru / \*hashitte iru tokoro da.*  
 (Look! John is running.)
- [4] この写真は学生がフリスビーをしているところです / \*しています。  
*Kono shashin wa gakusei ga furisubi o shite iru tokoro desu / \*shite imasu.*  
 (This picture shows students playing frisbee (lit. is a scene of students playing frisbee).)

III. *Vinf.past tokoro da* is similar to *Vinf.past bakari da*. However, their implications are different. That is, the former indicates that someone / something is in the state of having just done something, while the latter implies that someone / something did something and not much time has passed since then. Thus, *tokoro da* is strange in [5] because *ishshūkan mae* 'a week ago' is too far in the past to be used to express "have just done something".



[5] 私は山本先生には一週間前にあったばかりだ / \*ところだ。

*Watashi wa Yamamoto-sensei ni wa isshūkan mae ni atta bakari da / \*tokoro da.*

(I met Prof. Yamamoto only a week ago.)

## ～to shite ～として prt.

a compound particle which indicates  
the capacity, role or function of s.o.  
or s.t.

as; in the capacity of

### ◆ Key Sentence

	Noun		
田中さん は <i>Tanaka-san wa</i>	セールスマン <i>sērusuman</i>	と し て <i>to shite</i>	採用された / されました。 <i>saiyōsareta / saremashita.</i>

(Mr. Tanaka was hired as a salesman.)

### Formation

N と し て  
*to shite*

先生 と し て (as a teacher)  
*sensei to shite*

### Examples

(a) 私は医者としてあなたに言います。

*Watashi wa isha to shite anata ni iimasu.*

(I'll tell you (this) as a doctor.)

(b) 木村さんは友達としてつき合っているだけです。

*Kimura-san to wa tomodachi to shite tsukiatte iru dake desu.*

(I'm just keeping company with Mr. Kimura as a friend.)

(c) この部屋は物置として使っている。

*Kono heya wa monooki to shite tsukatte iru.*

(I'm using this room as a storeroom.)



~to shite wa ~としては prt.

a compound particle which indicates  
a standard for comparisons

for

【REL. ~ni shite wa】

### ◆ Key Sentence

	Noun		
この ステーキ は <i>Kono sutēki wa</i>	日本 の ステーキ <i>Nihon no sutēki</i>	と し て は <i>to shite wa</i>	安 い / 安 い で す。 <i>yasui / yasuidesu.</i>

(This steak is inexpensive for Japanese steak.)

### Formation

N と し て は

*to shite wa*

先生 と し て は (for a teacher)

*sensei to shite wa*

### Examples

(a) ジョンソンさんは日本語の一年生としては日本語が上手だ。

*Jonson-san wa nihongo no ichinensei to shite wa nihongo ga jōzuda.*

(Mr. Johnson is good at Japanese for a first-year student (of Japanese).)

(b) これは日本のアパートとしては大きい方です。

*Kore wa Nihon no apāto to shite wa ōkii hō desu.*

(For a Japanese apartment, this is one of the bigger ones.)

### 【Related Expression】

*Ni shite wa* is also used to present a standard for comparisons. However, it is different from *to shite wa* in terms of the speaker's presupposition. That is, sentences with X *ni shite wa* presuppose that the person or the thing referred to by the subject is X, whereas those with X *to shite wa* have no such presupposition. In Ex. (a), for example, Mr. Johnson may or may not be a first-year Japanese student. However, if *ni shite wa* is used, it is presupposed that he is actually a first-year Japanese student. The two expressions are also different in that *ni shite wa* can be used when the speaker doesn't know exactly what he is comparing with the standard he presents, but *to shite wa* cannot be used in such situations. For example, suppose that someone receives a package and doesn't know its contents. In this situa-



tion, he can say *hon ni shite wa*, assuming that the package contains books, but he cannot say *hon to shite wa*, as in [1].

[1] これは本にしては / \*としては軽すぎるね。

*Kore wa hon ni shite wa / \*to shite wa karusugiru ne.*

(This is too light for books, isn't it?)

## tsumori つもり n.

an intention or conviction of a speaker (or a person with whom the speaker can empathize) about his future or past actions or current state

intend to ~ ; be convinced that ~ ; believe; feel sure that ~ ; be going to; mean

【REL. *hazu*; ~yō to omou】

### ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Vinf·nonpast		
私 <i>Watashi</i>	は <i>wa</i>	来年 <i>rainen</i>	結婚する <i>kekkinsuru</i>	つもり <i>tsumori</i> だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>
(I intend to get married next year.)				

T

(B)

Topic (subject)		Adj (i) inf·nonpast		
父 <i>Chichi</i>	は <i>wa</i>	まだ <i>mada</i>	若い <i>wakai</i>	つもり <i>tsumori</i> だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>
(My father is convinced that he is still young.)				

(C)

Topic (subject)			Vinf·past		
私 Watashi	は wa	よく yoku	読んだ <i>yonda</i>	つもり <i>tsumori</i>	だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>
(I'm convinced that I read it carefully.)					

(D)

Topic (subject)	Noun				
これ Kore	は wa	お礼 <i>o-rei</i>	の no	つもり <i>tsumori</i>	だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>
(Lit. This is my intention of appreciation. (=This is a token of my appreciation.))					

**Formation**

(i) Vinf つもり だ  
*tsumori da*

{話す / 話した} つもり だ (intend to talk / s.o. is convinced he  
 {hanasu / hanashita} *tsumori da* talked)

(ii) Adj (i) inf·nonpast つもり だ  
*tsumori da*

強い つもり だ (s.o. is convinced that he is strong)  
*tsuyoi tsumori da*

(iii) Adj (na) stem な つもり だ  
*na tsumori da*

元気な つもり だ (s.o. is convinced that he is healthy)  
*genkina tsumori da*

(iv) N の つもり だ  
*no tsumori da*

先生 の つもり だ (s.o. is convinced that he is a teacher)  
*sensei no tsumori da*

**Examples**

(a) 休みには何をするつもりですか。

*Yasumi ni wa nani o suru tsumori desu ka.*

(What do you intend to do during the vacation?)

- (b) 僕は大学に行くつもりはない。  
*Boku wa daigaku ni iku tsumori wa nai.*  
(I have no intention of going to college.)
- (c) あんな人にはもう会わないつもりです。  
*Anna hito ni wa mō awanai tsumori desu.*  
(I do not intend to see that kind of person.)
- (d) 私はまだ元気なつもりだ。  
*Watashi wa mada genkina tsumori da.*  
(I'm convinced that I'm still healthy.)
- (e) 話したつもりでしたが、話さなかつたんですね。  
*Hanashita tsumori deshita ga, hanasanakatta n desu ne.*  
(I thought I talked to you, but I didn't, did I?)
- (f) この仕事は遊びのつもりです。  
*Kono shigoto wa asobi no tsumori desu.*  
(This work is intended to be a pastime.)
- (g) それで勉強しているつもりですか。  
*Sore de benkyōshite iru tsumori desu ka.*  
(Are you sure you can study like that?)

**Notes**

1. *Tsumori* is a dependent noun and must be preceded by a modifier. The minimal modifier is *sono* 'that'.
  - (1) A : 行くつもりですか。  
*Iku tsumori desu ka.*  
(Do you intend to go there?)
  - B : ええ、そのつもりです / \*ええ、つもりです。  
*Ē, sono tsumori desu / \*Ē, tsumori desu.*  
(Yes, I do.)
2. The subject of a statement containing *tsumori da* must be the first person or someone with whom the speaker empathizes. In a question, however, the subject must be the second person or someone with whom the hearer empathizes.
  - (2) a. 僕 / 母 / 友達 / \*あのサラリーマン / \*あなたは食べるつもりだ。  
***Boku / Haha / Tomodachi / \*Ano sarariman / \*Anata wa taberu tsumori da.***  
(I / My mother / My friend / That salaried man / You intend(s) to eat it.)



- b. \*僕 / \*母 / \*友達 / 山田さん / あなたは食べるつもりですか。  
*\*Boku / \*Haha / \*Tomodachi / Yamada-san / Anata wa taberu tsumori desu ka.*  
 (Do / Does I / my mother / my friend / Mr. Yamada / you intend to eat it?)

3. *Tsumori da* can be negated in two ways. The verb / adjective in front of *tsumori* can be negated, as in Ex. (c), or *tsumori* can be negated as *tsumori wa nai* (not *\*tsumori de wa nai*), as in Ex. (b). The difference between these two negative versions is that the second version implies stronger negation than the first one, as shown by (3) below:

(3) A : 今晚の音楽会に行くつもりですか。

*Konban no ongakukai ni iku tsumori desu ka.*

(Do you intend to go to tonight's concert?)

B : まだよく分かりませんが、多分、行かないつもりです / ??行くつもりはありません。

*Mada yoku wakarimasen ga, tabun, ikanai tsumori desu / ??iku tsumori wa arimasen.*

(I can't tell for sure now, but probably I'm not going there.)

### 【Related Expressions】

- I. *Tsumori* should not be confused with *hazu* which means 'expectation' rather than 'conviction'. ( $\Leftrightarrow hazu$ )
- II. *Tsumori da* is comparable but not identical to *yō to omou*. Firstly, *yō to omou* can replace *tsumori da* only in KS(A), that is, only when a verb precedes *tsumori da*. Secondly, *yō to omou* indicates a spur-of-the moment decision while *tsumori da* indicates a more stable conviction / intention. Thus, if you are shown a car by a car salesman, you can say:

[1] a. この車はよさそうなので買おうと思いますがいくらですか。

*Kono kuruma wa yosasōna node kāō to omoimasu ga ikura desu ka.*

(This car looks nice, so I think I will buy it, but how much is it?)

But it is strange to say:

b. ??この車はよさそうなので買うつもりですがいくらですか。

*?Kono kuruma wa yosasōna node kau tsumori desu ga ikura desu ka.*



(Lit. ??This car looks nice, so I intend to buy it, but how much is it?)

Or, if you see an interesting ad for a stereo set in the newspaper, you can say [2a] but not [2b].

- [2] a. ステレオの広告を見て買おうと思ったら家内に反対された。

*Sutereo no kōkoku o mite kaō to omottara kanai ni hantaisareta.*

(Lit. Upon looking at an ad for stereos, I thought I would buy one, but my wife objected to it.)

- b. ??ステレオの 広告を見て 買うつもりだったら、 家内に 反対された。

*?Sutereo no kōkoku o mite kau tsumori dattara, kanai ni hantaisareta.*

(Lit. ??Upon looking at an ad for stereos, I intended to buy one, but my wife objected to it.)

-tte<sup>1</sup> って *prt.*

{ a colloquial topic-introducer }

Speaking of ~

【REL. (no) wa; ~to ieba  
(ttara)】



## ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Noun		
アメリカ人 <i>Amerikajin</i>	って <i>tte</i>	フットボールが好きだ / 好きですね。 <i>futtabōru ga sukida / sukidesu ne.</i>

(Speaking of Americans, they love football, don't they?)

(B)

Sentence		
漢字 を 覚える <i>Kanji o oboeru</i>	って <i>tte</i>	大変だ / 大変です ね。 <i>taihenda / taihendesu ne.</i>
(Lit. To memorize <i>kanji</i> , it's terribly hard, isn't it? (=It's really hard to memorize <i>kanji</i> , isn't it?))		

**Formation**

KS(A)

N って  
*tte*

先生 って (speaking of the teacher)

*sensei tte*

KS(B)

{V / Adj (i)} inf·nonpast って  
*tte*

話す って (to talk (topic))

*hanasu tte*

高い って (to be expensive (topic))

*takai tte***Examples**

(a) 漢字っておもしろいですよ。

*Kanji tte omoshiroidesu yo.*(Speaking of *kanji*, they are interesting, I tell you.)

(b) 日本人ってよく写真を撮りますね。

*Nihonjin tte yoku shashin o torimasu ne.*

(Speaking of Japanese people, they love taking pictures, don't they?)

(c) 外国で暮らすって難しいね。

*Gaikoku de kurasu tte muzukashii ne.*

(Living in a foreign country is hard, isn't it?)

(d) 木が多いっていいものだね。

*Ki ga ōi tte ii mono da ne.*

(It's good to have many trees, isn't it?)



(e) 家が広いっていいですね。

*Ie ga hiroi tte iidesu ne.*

(It's good to have a spacious house, isn't it?)

### Notes

1. You should not use Adj (*na*) stem *tte*, unless it is an Adj (*na*) that can be used also as a noun as in: *kenkō* 'healthy / health', *kodoku* 'lonely / loneliness', *shinsetsu* 'kind / kindness', etc.

(1) a. 健康ってありがたいですね。

*Kenkō tte arigatai desu ne.*

(Health is a precious thing, you know.)

b. \*元気ってありがたいですね。

\**Genki tte arigatai desu ne.*

(Health is a precious thing, you know.)

2. You should not confuse *-tte<sup>1</sup>* with *-tte<sup>2</sup>* of hearsay. (⇒ *tte<sup>2</sup>*) Consider the following sentences:

(2) a. 山崎が医者になったって本当ですか。

*Yamazaki ga isha ni natta tte hontō desu ka.*

(I heard that Yamazaki has become a medical doctor, but is it true?)

b. 日本の肉が高いって、どのぐらい高いんですか。

*Nihon no niku ga takai tte dono gurai takai n desu ka.*

(I heard that Japanese meat is expensive, but how expensive is it?)

3. *-tte<sup>1</sup>* tends to co-occur with the sentence-final particles *ne* or *yo*.

### [Related Expression]

When *-tte* is attached to a noun as in KS(A) and Exs. (a) and (b), it is close in meaning to the topic marker *wa*. When *-tte* is attached to a sentence as in KS(B) and Exs. (c), (d) and (e), it is close in meaning to ~ (*to iu*) *no wa*. *-tte*, however, is more colloquial and emotive than *wa* or (*to iu*) *no wa*. In fact, if the predicate does not express the speaker's emotive judgment / evaluation *-tte* cannot be used. Thus,

[1] a. 山口さんは / \*って先生です。

*Yamaguchi-san wa / \*tte sensei desu.*

(Mr. Yamaguchi is a teacher.)



b. 山口さんは / って変な人ですね。

*Yamaguchi-san wa / tte henna hito desu ne.*

(Mr. Yamaguchi is a strange person, isn't he?)

-tte<sup>2</sup> って *prt.*

{ a colloquial quotation marker } that  
【REL. *sōda*<sup>1</sup>; *to*<sup>3</sup>】

### ◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			
ジェーン <i>Jēn</i>	は <i>wa</i>	踊らない <i>odoranai</i>	って。 <i>tte.</i>
(Jane said that she wouldn't dance / They say that Jane won't dance.)			

### Examples

(a) 今は雪が降るって。

*Konban wa yuki ga furutte.*

(They say it's going to snow tonight.)

(b) 僕も行こうかって思いました。

*Boku mo ikō ka tte omoimashita.*

(I wondered if I should go there, too.)

### Notes

1. Quote + *tte*<sup>2</sup> is a colloquial version of Quote + *to*<sup>3</sup>. ( $\Leftrightarrow$  *to*<sup>3</sup>) Any quotation which can precede *to*<sup>3</sup> can precede -*tte*.
2. When there is a human topic in the -*tte* construction as in KS, the sentence is ambiguous as to whose quotation it is. The person who is quoting can be either the topic person or 'they'. But if a reporting verb *iu* 'say' is used after -*tte*, then the sentence means 'The person (topic) says that ~'.

- (1) ジェーンは踊らないって言っているよ。

*Jēn wa odoranai tte itte iru yo.*

(Jane is saying that she won't dance.)

3. When -tte is not followed by a verb, the understood verb is *iu* 'say'. Other verbs (i.e., *omou* 'feel, think') cannot be deleted after -tte, as shown in Ex. (b).

### [Related Expressions]

- I. /*itta* / *iimashita* 'said', *itte iru* / *imasu* 'is saying' or *itte ita* / *imashita* 'was saying' can be deleted after -tte<sup>2</sup>, as seen in KS and [1] below, but not after *to*<sup>3</sup>, as seen in [2].

- [1] a. ジェーンは踊らないって言った。

*Jēn wa odoranai tte itta.*

(Jane said that she wouldn't dance.)

- b. ジェーンは踊らないって。

*Jēn wa odoranai tte.*

(=KS)

- [2] a. ジェーンは踊らないと言った。

*Jēn wa odoranai to itta.*

(Jane said that she wouldn't dance.)

- b. \*ジェーンは踊らないと。

\**Jēn wa odoranai to.*

The difference between -tte<sup>2</sup> and *to*<sup>3</sup> is that the former is more emphatic and emotive owing to its glottal stop.

(⇒ Characteristics of Japanese Grammar, 8. Sound Symbolisms)

- II. When the subject of the understood *iu* is an unspecified person(s), as in the second interpretation of KS, -tte<sup>2</sup> is similar to the hearsay *sōda*<sup>1</sup> 'they say ~'. -tte<sup>2</sup>, however, is more colloquial and informal than *sōda*<sup>1</sup>. (⇒ *sōda*<sup>1</sup>) X *ga itte ita kedo* 'X was saying but' or its variants are used when specifying an informational source in the -tte construction, not the usual X *ni yoru to*, as shown in [3].

- [3] a. ジョンが言っていたけど、ジェーンは踊らないって。

*Jon ga itte ita kedo, Jēn wa odoranai tte.*

(According to John, Jane is not going to dance.)

- b. ジョンによると、ジェーンは踊らないそうだ / \*って。

*Jon ni yoru to, Jēn wa odoranai sōda / \*tte.*

(According to John, Jane is not going to dance.)



**uchi ni** うちに *conj.*

{ during a period when a certain situation remains in effect }

while; before; during

【REL. *aida (ni)*; **mae ni**; *chū (ni)*】

## ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)	Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
		Verb (stative)		
前田さん <i>Maeda-san</i>	は <i>wa</i>	アメリカに <i>Amerika ni</i>	いる <i>iru</i>	うちに <i>uchi ni</i> 英語が上手に <i>eigo ga jōzuni</i> なった / なりました。 <i>natta / narimashita.</i>
(Mr. Maeda's English improved while he was in America.)				

(B)

Subordinate Clause		Main Clause	
Vinf·neg·nonpast			
何も <i>Nani mo</i>	しない <i>shinai</i>	うちに <i>uchi ni</i>	今年も終わった / 終わりました。 <i>kotoshi mo owatta / owarimashita.</i>
(Lit. Before I've achieved anything, this year is over.)			

(C)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause	
Vte				
走って <i>Hashitte</i>	いる <i>iru</i>	うちに <i>uchi ni</i>	おなかが痛くなった / なりました。 <i>onaka ga itakunatta / narimashita.</i>	
(My stomach started to ache while I was running.)				



(D)

Subordinate Clause		Main Clause
Adj (i) inf·nonpast		
若い <i>Wakai</i>	うちに <i>uchi ni</i>	本をたくさん読みなさい。 <i>hon o takusan yominasai.</i>
(Read many books while you're young.)		

**Formation**

(i) Vinf·nonpast うちに (V: stative)  
*uchi ni*

いるうちに (while s.o. is there)  
*iru uchi ni*

話せるうちに (while s.o. can talk)  
*hanaseru uchi ni*

(ii) Vinf·neg·nonpast うちに  
*uchi ni*

話さないうちに (before s.o. talks)  
*hanasanai uchi ni*

食べないうちに (before s.o. eats)  
*tabenai uchi ni*

(iii) Vte いるうちに  
*iru uchi ni*

話しているうちに (while s.o. is talking)  
*hanashite iru uchi ni*

食べているうちに (while s.o. is eating)  
*tabete iru uchi ni*

(iv) Adj (i) inf·nonpast うちに  
*uchi ni*

高いうちに (while s.t. is expensive)  
*takai uchi ni*

(v) Adj (na) stem なうちに  
*na uchi ni*

静かなうちに (while s.t. is quiet)  
*shizukana uchi ni*



(vi) N の うち に

*no uchi ni*

休み の うち に (during the vacation)

*yasumi no uchi ni***Examples**

(a) 雨が降らないうちにテニスをして来ます。

*Ame ga furanai uchi ni tenisu o shite kimasu.*

(I'll go and play tennis (and come back) before it rains.)

(b) 忘れないうちに言っておきたいことがある。

*Wasurenai uchi ni itte okitai koto ga aru.*

(There is something I want to tell you before I forget.)

(c) 考えているうちに分からなくなつた。

*Kangaete iru uchi ni wakaranaku natta.*

(While thinking about it, I got lost.)

(d) 働けるうちに出来るだけ働きたい。

*Hatarakeru uchi ni dekiru dake hatarakitai.*

(I'd like to work as much as possible while I can work.)

(e) 温かいうちに飲んでください。

*Atatakai uchi ni nonde kudasai.*

(Please drink it while it is warm.)

(f) 休みのうちによく寝ておきます。

*Yasumi no uchi ni yoku nete okimasu.*

(I'll sleep a lot during the vacation.)

**Notes**

1. The *uchi ni* clause expresses the general time during which a given action or state occurs. *Uchi ni* is preceded by verbs describing states or progressive actions, or by adjectives, or by nouns expressing duration such as *haru* 'spring', *hiruma* 'day time' and *shūkan* 'week'. (For examples, see KSs(A), (C), (D) and Ex. (f), respectively.)
2. The tense before *uchi ni* is always nonpast, regardless of the tense of the main clause.
3. The verb before *uchi ni* is frequently negated, as in KS (B), Exs. (a) and (b).



**[Related Expressions]**

I. When it indicates an interval of time, *aida* refers to the ‘time space’ between two points, i.e., the beginning and the end. In other words, the time space indicated by *aida* can be measured in clocktime. *Uchi*, however, does not refer to such measurable time space; it simply means ‘time space within’. Thus, in a situation where a mother wants to read books while her child is away at school, either *uchi* or *aida* can be used, as in [1a]. However, in a situation where we want to play tennis before it rains, we cannot substitute *aida* for *uchi*, as in [1b], because it is impossible to specify a time boundary.

- [1] a. 子供が学校に行っているうちに / 間に本を読みます。

*Kodomo ga gakkō ni itte iru uchi ni / aida ni hon o yomimasu.*

(I read books while my child is away at school.)

- b. 雨が降らないうちに / \*間にテニスをします。

*Ame ga furanai uchi ni / \*aida ni tenisu o shimasu.*

(I'll go and play tennis before it rains.)

- c. 冷たいうちに / \*間にビールを飲んでください。

*Tsumetai uchi ni / \*aida ni biru o nonde kudasai.*

(Please drink the beer while it is cold.)

II. The *uchi ni* construction cannot be used for situations where a noun is an event noun such as *jugyō* ‘class’, *kaigi* ‘conference’ and *shiai* ‘game’.

- [2] a. 授業の間に / 中(に) / \*のうちによく質問をした。

*Jugyō no aida ni / chū (ni) / \*no uchi ni yoku shitsumon o shita.*

(He frequently asked questions during the class.)

- b. 試合の間に / 中(に) / \*のうちに雨が降って來た。

*Shiai no aida ni / chū (ni) / \*no uchi ni ame ga futte kita.*

(It started to rain while the game was going on.)



**wa<sup>1</sup> は prt.**

a particle which marks a topic or  
a contrastive element

talking about ~; as for ~; the  
【REL. *ga*<sup>1</sup>】

**◆ Key Sentences**

(A)

Topic (subject)			
私 <i>Watashi</i>	は <i>wa</i>	学生 <i>gakusei</i>	だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>
(I am a student.)			

(B)

Contrastive Element <sub>1</sub>	は	Contrastive Element <sub>2</sub>	は	
杉田さん <i>Sugita-san</i>	<i>wa</i>	行きます <i>ikimasu</i>	が <i>ga</i>	私 <i>watashi</i> は <i>wa</i> 行きません。 <i>ikimasen.</i>
(Mr. Sugita will go (there) but I won't go.)				

**Examples**

- (a) ジョーンズさんは今日本語を勉強している。  
*Jōnzu-san wa ima nihongo o benkyōshite iru.*  
 (Mr. Jones is studying Japanese now.)
- (b) この町には大学が二つある。  
*Kono machi ni wa daigaku ga futatsu aru.*  
 (There are two universities in this town.)
- (c) 私はビールは飲みますが酒は飲みません。  
*Watashi wa biru wa nomimasu ga sake wa nomimasen.*  
 (I drink beer but don't drink sake.)
- (d) 春子には人形を、秋子には絵本をあげた。  
*Haruko ni wa ningyō o, Akiko ni wa ehon o ageta.*  
 (I gave Haruko a doll and Akiko a picture book.)

**Notes**

1. The origin of *wa* can be traced to the conditional marker *ba*. (Compare the spellings of *wa* (は) and *ba* (ば).) (⇒ **ba**) However, in con-



temporary Japanese, *wa* is used, in general, to mark information which the speaker assumes to be part of the hearer's register. In other words, when *wa* marks X, the speaker usually assumes that the hearer knows what X refers to. Thus, noun phrases which can be marked by *wa* in ordinary circumstances are as follows:

- (A) Common nouns whose referents have already been introduced into the discourse linguistically or extra-linguistically. Example:

(1) 昔々、一人のおじいさんが住んでいました。

*Mukashimukashi, hitori no o-jī-san ga sunde imashita.*

(Once upon a time, there lived an old man.)

おじいさんはとてもやさしい人でした。

*O-jī-san wa totemo yasashii hito deshita.*

(The old man was a very gentle man.)

- (B) Proper nouns. Examples:

(2) アメリカ 'America'; スミスさん 'Mr. Smith'  
*Amerika*                            *Sumisu-san*

- (C) Nouns whose referents can be uniquely identified (that is, they are one of a kind). Examples:

(3) 太陽 'sun'; 空 'sky'  
*taiyō*                            *sora*

- (D) Generic names. Examples:

(4) 人 'man'; 車 'car'  
*hito*                            *kuruma*

It is noted that *wa* never marks WH-words such as *nani* 'what' and *dare* 'who'. Thus, (5) is ungrammatical.

(5) \*だれはパーティーに来ましたか。

\**Dare wa pāti ni kimashita ka.*

(Who came to the party?)

This is because WH-words do not refer to a known thing and, therefore, their referents can never be in the hearer's register.

2. More specifically, *wa* marks a topic and / or a contrastive element. When *wa* is used as a topic marker, as in X *wa* Y, X is something the rest of the sentence (i.e., Y) is about, and the focus of the sentence falls on Y or part of Y. (Cp. *ga*<sup>1</sup>) The topic X *wa* normally appears at the beginning of a sentence.



3. *Wa* is also used to mark a contrastive element, as in KS (B), Exs. (c) and (d). However, whether *wa* is being used as a topic marker or as a contrastive marker is not always clear. This is not clear particularly when there is one element X marked by *wa* but there is no other element Y explicitly contrasted with X. Here are some general rules for determining whether a given *wa* is topical or contrastive.

(A) When more than one *wa* appears in a sentence, as in “X *wa* Y *wa* Z *wa* . . .”, the first *wa* is usually understood to be the topic marker, the second *wa* is more contrastive than the first one, the third one is more contrastive than the second, and so on. Examples:

- (6) 太郎はテニスは出来ます。  
*Tarō wa tenisu wa dekimasu.*  
 (Taro can play tennis.)
- (7) 僕は今日はテニスはしない。  
*Boku wa kyō wa tenisu wa shinai.*  
 (I won't play tennis today.)

(B) When X *wa* is pronounced with stress, it marks a contrastive element. Examples:

- (8) 私は一年です。  
*Watashi wa ichinen desu.*  
 ((I don't know about other people but, at least) I am a freshman.)
- (9) ビールは飲みます。  
*Biru wa nomimasu.*  
 ((I don't drink other drinks but) I drink beer.)

4. When *wa* is used in negative sentences, it marks the negated element. This is a special use of *wa* as a contrastive marker. Compare the following sentences:

- (10) a. 私はきのうボストンへ行かなかった。  
*Watashi wa kinō Bosuton e ikanakatta.*  
 (I didn't go to Boston yesterday.)
- b. 私はきのうはボストンへ行かなかった。  
*Watashi wa kinō wa Bosuton e ikanakatta.*  
 (I didn't go to Boston yesterday.)



c. 私はきのうボストンへは行かなかった。

*Watashi wa kinō Bosuton e wa ikanakatta.*

(I didn't go to Boston yesterday.)

(10a) simply states that the speaker didn't go to Boston yesterday. (10b) negates *yesterday*, implying that the speaker went to Boston on other days or that he usually goes to Boston on that day but didn't yesterday. Likewise, (10c) negates *to Boston*, implying that the speaker went somewhere but it was not to Boston.

5. There are rules for particle ellipsis when *wa* marks noun phrases with case markers (i.e., particles such as the subject marker *ga* (=*ga*<sup>1</sup>) and the direct object marker *o* (=*o*<sup>1</sup>)).

- (A) When *wa* marks X *ga* or X *o*, *ga* or *o* must drop. (Exs. (a) and (c))
- (B) When *wa* marks X *e* or X *ni*<sup>6</sup> (location), *e* or *ni* optionally drop. (Ex. (b))
- (C) When *wa* marks X *ni*<sup>1</sup> / *ni*<sup>2</sup> / *ni*<sup>3</sup> / *ni*<sup>4</sup> (time, indirect object, agent, contact), X *de*, X *to*, X *kara*, X *made* or X *yori*, the case marker usually remains and *wa* follows it, forming a double particle. (Ex. (d)) More examples follow:

(11) ここではたばこを吸わないでください。

*Koko de wa tabako o suwanaide kudasai.*

(Please don't smoke here.)

(12) 田中さんとはよく会います。

*Tanaka-san to wa yoku aimasu.*

(I see Mr. Tanaka often.)

6. The topical *wa* does not appear in subordinate clauses, as in (13).

- (13) a. 花子は私が / \*はきのう酒を飲んだことを知っている。

*Hanako wa watashi ga / \*wa kinō sake o nondā koto o shitte iru.*

(Hanako knows that I drank *sake* yesterday.)

- b. 私が / \*は読んだ本は「雪国」です。

*Watashi ga / \*wa yonda hon wa "Yukiguni" desu.*

(The book I read was *Snow Country*.)



**wa<sup>2</sup> わ** *prt.*

a sentence particle used in weak assertive or volitional sentences by a female speaker

**◆ Key Sentence**

Sentence	
私 もあしたの パーティー に行く <i>Watashi mo ashita no pāti ni iku</i>	わ。 <i>wa.</i>
(I'll go to tomorrow's party, too.)	

**Examples**

- (a) 大木さんはもう帰りましたわ。  
*Ōki-san wa mō kaerimashita wa.*  
 (Mr. Oki has already gone home.)
- (b) 久子はまだ学生ですわ。  
*Hisako wa mada gakusei desu wa.*  
 (Hisako is still a student.)
- (c) この部屋は小さいわ。  
*Kono heya wa chisai wa.*  
 (This room is small.)

**Notes**

1. The sentence particle *wa* is used only in female speech and expresses the speaker's weak assertion or volition. In addition, *wa* sometimes expresses the speaker's intimacy or friendliness.
2. *Wa* can follow any declarative sentence, but cannot follow the volitional forms of verbs. Thus, the following sentence is ungrammatical.

- (1) \*私が行きましょう / 行こうわ。  
*\*Watashi ga ikimashō / ikō wa.*  
 (I will go.)

Note that *wa* cannot be used in questions.

- (2) a. \*ジャクソンさんは学生ですかわ。  
*\*Jakuson-san wa gakusei desu ka wa.*  
 (Is Mr. Jackson a student?)



- b. \*ジャクソンさんは学生ですか。  
 \*Jakuson-san wa gakusei desu wa ka.  
 (Is Mr. Jackson a student?)
- c. \*ジャクソンさんは学生ですか?  
 \*Jakuson-san wa gakusei desu wa?  
 (Is Mr. Jackson a student?)

3. Other sentence particles such as *ne* and *yo* can occur with *wa*. In this case, *wa* must precede these particles.

- (3) 私も行くわね。  
*Watashi mo iku wa ne.*  
 (I'll go there, too. All right?)
- (4) 私も行くわよ。  
*Watashi mo iku wa yo.*  
 (I'll go there, too. (Emphatic))

~wa ~da ~は ~だ str.

S.o. or s.t. is / was s.o. or s.t. or  
 is / was in some state, or will do /  
 does / did s.t.

#### ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)	Noun	
これ Kore	は wa	本 <i>hon</i>
だ / です。 <i>da / desu.</i>		
(This is a book.)		

(B)

Topic (subject)	Noun	Prt	
コンサート Konsāto	は wa	八時 <i>hachiji</i>	から <i>kara</i>
(Lit. The concert is from eight o'clock. (=The concert starts at eight o'clock.))			

**Examples**

(a) あの人は先生だ。

*Ano hito wa sensei da.*

(That person is a teacher.)

(b) 私はジョーンズです。

*Watashi wa Jōnzu desu.*

(I am Jones.)

(c) 授業は四時までです。

*Jugyō wa yoji made desu.*

(Lit. My classes are till four o'clock. (=I have classes till four o'clock.))

(d) 今度の試合はワシントン大学とだ。

*Kondo no shiai wa Washinton Daigaku to da.*

(The next game is against the University of Washington.)

**Notes**

1. “A *wa* B *da*” is probably the most basic sentence structure in Japanese. The very basic meaning of this construction is “A is B”. However, this pattern can convey more than that meaning. For example, the second sentence in (1) literally means ‘My wife is tea’, but actually means ‘My wife drinks tea.’ Here, the copula *da* is used in place of *nomu* ‘drink’.

(1) 私は毎朝コーヒーを飲む。家内は紅茶だ。

*Watashi wa maiasa kōhi o nomu. Kanai **wa** kōcha **da**.*

(I drink coffee every morning. Lit. My wife is tea. (=My wife drinks tea.))

In fact, this structure is used frequently in conversation, as in (2), where the copula *desu* in B’s sentence means *ikimasu* ‘am going’.



(2) A: 私はハワイへ行きます。

*Watashi wa Hawai e ikimasu.*

(I'm going to Hawaii.)

B: 私はフロリダです。

*Watashi wa Furorida desu.*

(Lit. I am Florida. (=I'm going to Florida.))

In general, the copula can be used in place of a predicate if the meaning can be understood from context. Note the following examples:

(3) このレストランはすしがおいしい。あのレストランはてんぷらだ。

*Kono resutoran wa sushi ga oishii. Ano resutoran wa tenpura da.*  
(*Sushi* is good at this restaurant. At that restaurant *tempura* is good.)

(4) ディックはスケートが上手だ。ポールはスキーだ。

*Dikku wa sukēto ga jōzuda. Pōru wa ski da.*

(Dick is good at (ice) skating. Paul is good at skiing.)

(5) みつ子はお母さんが病気だ。つとむはお父さんだ。

*Mitsuko wa o-kā-san ga byōki da. Tsutomu wa o-tō-san da.*

(In Mitsuko's family, her mother is ill. In Tsutomu's family, his father is ill.)

What the copula *da* means may be understood from the linguistic context, as in (1) – (5), or from the extra-linguistic context, as in (6).

(6) [In an order situation at a restaurant]

僕はうなぎだ。

*Boku wa unagi da.*

(Lit. I am an eel. (=I'll have eel / I'd like eel.))

2. In “A *wa* B *da*”, B may be a noun phrase, as in KS(A) or a noun phrase with a particle, as in KS(B). General rules about particle ellipsis and retention in this construction follow:

(A) *Ga*, *o*, *e* and *ni* (time (=*ni*<sup>1</sup>), location (=*ni*<sup>6</sup>)) must drop. (See (1) – (6).)

(B) *Ni* (indirect object (=*ni*<sup>2</sup>), agent (=*ni*<sup>3</sup>), direct contact (=*ni*<sup>4</sup>)) and *de* (location (=*de*<sup>1</sup>), means (=*de*<sup>2</sup>)) may drop. Examples:

(7) A: 僕はケンにたのんだ。

*Boku wa Ken ni tanonda.*

(I asked Ken.)



B : 僕はアンディー(に)だ。

*Boku wa Andi (ni) da.*

(I asked Andy.)

(8) A : 僕はアパートで勉強する。

*Boku wa apāto de benkyōsuru.*

(I study in my apartment.)

B : 僕は図書館(で)だ。

*Boku wa toshokan (de) da.*

(I study at the library.)

(C) *De* (reason), *to*, *kara* and *made* usually do not drop. Examples:

(9) A : 僕は病気で休んだ。

*Boku wa byōki de yasunda.*

(I was absent because of illness.)

B : 僕はけがで / ??ø だ。

*Boku wa kega de / ??ø da.*

(I was absent because I got injured (lit. because of an injury).)

(10) A : 私は一郎と踊りました。

*Watashi wa Ichirō to odorimashita.*

(I danced with Ichiro.)

B : 私は信男と / ??ø です。

*Watashi wa Nobuo to / ??ø desu.*

(I danced with Nobuo.)

3. When the copula is used for a predicate, it usually appears in the non-past tense regardless of the tense of the predicate, as in (7) and (9).

4. In “A *wa* B *da*”, A *wa* may drop if it can be understood from context, as seen in (11).

(11) A : それは何ですか。

*Sore wa nan desu ka.*

(What is that?)

B : (これは)辞書です。

*(Kore wa) Jisho desu.*

(This is a dictionary.)



～wa ～ga ～は ～が str.

a construction which relates a non-controllable state of s.t. or s.o. to a topic

### ◆ Key Sentences

Topic (subject <sub>1</sub> )	Predicate <sub>1</sub>			Predicate <sub>2</sub>
	Subject <sub>2</sub>			
(1) 私 <i>Watashi</i>	は <i>wa</i>	英語 <i>eigo</i>	が <i>ga</i>	分かる / 分かります。 <i>wakaru / wakarimasu.</i>
(I understand English. (Lit. To me, English is understandable.))				
(2) 花子 <i>Hanako</i>	は <i>wa</i>	目 <i>me</i>	が <i>ga</i>	きれいだ / きれいです。 <i>kireida / kireidesu.</i>
(Hanako has pretty eyes. (Lit. Speaking of Hanako, her eyes are pretty.))				
(3) 辞書 <i>Jisho</i>	は <i>wa</i>	ウェブスター <i>Webusutā</i>	が <i>ga</i>	いい / いいです。 <i>ii / iidesu.</i>
(Talking about dictionaries, Webster's is good.)				

### Examples

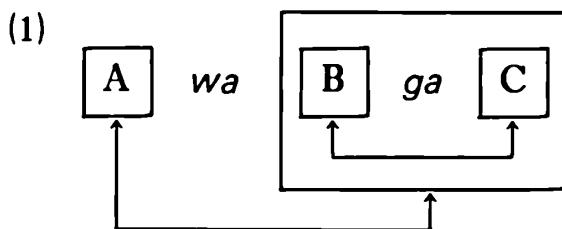
- (a) たかしはテニスが上手だ。  
*Takashi wa tenisu ga jōzuda.*  
 (Takashi is good at tennis.)
- (b) 私はボーイフレンドがほしい。  
*Watashi wa bōifurendo ga hoshii.*  
 (I want a boyfriend.)
- (c) 僕はフットボールが好きだ。  
*Boku wa futtobōru ga sukida.*  
 (I like football.)
- (d) 象は鼻が長い。  
*Zō wahana ga nagai.*  
 (Elephants have long trunks.)



- (e) 私はおなかがすいた。  
*Watashi wa onaka ga suita.*  
(I am hungry.)
- (f) ミラーさんは背が高い。  
*Mirā-san wa se ga takai.*  
(Mr. Miller is tall.)
- (g) 日本はステーキが高い。  
*Nihon wa sutēki ga takai.*  
(Steak is expensive in Japan.)
- (h) 海は日本海がきれいだ。  
*Umi wa Nihonkai ga kireida.*  
(Talking about the sea, the Japan Sea is clean.)
- (i) 日本の野球はどこが強いですか。  
*Nihon no yakyū wa doko ga tsuyoidesu ka.*  
(Talking about baseball in Japan, who is strong?)

**Notes**

- “A *wa* B *ga* C” is one of the basic constructions in Japanese. In this construction, C usually expresses something about B and “B *ga* C” expresses something about A, as illustrated in (1).



- Sentences utilizing this construction may be categorized into three classes:
  - A is human, and “B *ga* C” expresses A’s physical and / or mental state, for example, ability or desire, as in KS (1), Exs. (a), (b) and (c).
  - B is part of A, and C expresses something about B, which, in turn, expresses something about A, as in KS (2), Exs. (d), (e), (f) and (g).
  - B is a member of A, and C expresses something about B, as in KS (3), Exs. (h) and (i).
- Listed below are the verbs and adjectives which usually require the “A *wa* B *ga* C” construction. (Sentences with these verbs and adjectives belong to Class (A) in Note 2.)



## (2) Ability:

分かる (be understandable; understand)  
*wakaru*

出来る (can be done; can do)  
*dekiru*

られる (can)	見える (be visible)	聞こえる (be audible)
<i>rareru<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>mieru</i>	<i>kikoeru</i>

上手だ (good at)  
*jōzuda*

下手だ (poor at)  
*hetada*

得意だ (proudly good at)  
*tokuida*

苦手だ (ashamedly poor at)  
*nigateda*

(⇒ *kikoeru*; *mieru*; *rareru<sup>2</sup>*)

## (3) Desire / Need:

ほしい (desirable; want)	たい (want to)
<i>hoshii</i>	<i>tai</i>

いる (be necessary; need)	必要だ (necessary)
<i>iru<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>hitsuyōda</i>

(⇒ *hoshii<sup>1</sup>*; *iru<sup>3</sup>*; *tai*)

## (4) Fondness:

好きだ (be liked; like)	きらいだ (be disliked; dislike)
<i>sukida</i>	<i>kiraida</i>

(⇒ *kiraida*; *sukida*)

## (5) Emotion:

はづかしい (embarrassing)	なつかしい (nostalgic)
<i>hazukashii</i>	<i>natsukashii</i>

にくらしい (hateful)	おそろしい (dreadful)
<i>nikurashii</i>	<i>osoroshii</i>

こわい (fearful)	うらやましい (enviable)
<i>kowai</i>	<i>urayamashii</i>

くやしい (vexing)	
<i>kuyashii</i>	



**~wa ikenai** ~はいけない phr.

a phrase which indicates prohibition

cannot do s.t.; must not do s.t.;  
Don't do s.t.; should not do s.t.  
【REL. ~wa naranai】

◆ Key Sentence

	Vte	
この 部屋 に <i>Kono heya ni</i>	入って <i>haitte</i>	は いけない / いけません。 <i>wa ikenai / ikemasen.</i> (You must not enter this room.)

**Formation**

Vte は いけない  
*wa ikenai*

話して は いけない (must not talk)  
*hanashite wa ikenai*

食べて は いけない (must not eat)  
*tabete wa ikenai*

**Examples**

- (a) 教室でものを食べてはいけません。  
*Kyōshitsu de mono o tabete wa ikemasen.*  
(You must not eat (food) in the classroom.)
- (b) 花子はまだ酒を飲んではいけない。  
*Hanako wa mada sake o nonde wa ikenai.*  
(Hanako must / can not drink alcohol yet.)

**Notes**

1. In Vte *wa ikenai*, the second person subject is usually omitted, as in KS and Ex. (a).
2. Vte *wa ikenai* is often used as a negative answer to “Vte mo iidesu ka. (May I ~?).” (⇒ ~te mo ii)

**【Related Expression】**

*Vte wa naranai* also expresses prohibition. *Vte wa naranai*, however, sounds a little stronger than *Vte wa ikenai*.



## wakaru 分かる v. (Gr. 1)

can figure out (spontaneously) various facts—such as content, nature, value, meaning, cause, reason, result —about s.t. whose existence is presupposed

be comprehensible; understand; can tell; figure out  
【REL. *shiru*】

### ◆ Key Sentence

Topic (experiencer)	Object of Comprehension			
私 <i>Watashi</i>	(に) <i>(ni)</i>	は <i>wa</i>	この 言葉 <i>kono kotoba</i>	が <i>ga</i> 分からない / 分かりません。 <i>wakaranai / wakarimasen.</i>
(Lit. To me this word is not comprehensible. (=I don't understand this word.))				

### Examples

- (a) 私にはこの映画の意味が分からぬ。  
*Watashi ni wa kono eiga no imi ga wakaranai.*  
(I don't understand the meaning of this movie.)
- (b) この問題は難しくて分からぬ。  
*Kono mondai wa muzukashikute wakaranai.*  
(This problem is too difficult to understand.)
- (c) あしたまでにこの仕事が出来るかどうか分かりませぬ。  
*Ashita made ni kono shigoto ga dekiru ka dō ka wakarimasen.*  
(I can't tell if I can finish this work by tomorrow.)
- (d) A: 田中さんを知っていますか。  
*Tanaka-san o shitte imasu ka.*  
(Do you know Mr. Tanaka?)  
B: ええ、知っていますが、あの人はどうもよく分かりませぬ。  
*É, shitte imasu ga, ano hito wa dōmo yoku wakarimasen.*  
(Yes, I know him, but he is somehow incomprehensible to me.)

### Notes

1. The basic pattern for this verb is the ~ *wa* ~ *ga* pattern. (⇒ ~ *wa* ~ *ga*) The experiencer of *wakaru* takes *ni* optionally, as in KS.



2. Because *wakaru* is already a potential verb, it cannot take the potential form \**wakareru* ‘can understand’.
  3. *Wakaru* normally takes *ga* to indicate the object of comprehension, but must take *o* when ‘non-spontaneous comprehension’ is involved, as in causative sentences ((1a)) or sentences in which the experiencer makes a conscious effort to understand something ((1b)).
- (1) a. 親の死を / \*が小さい子供に分からせるのは難しい。  
*Oya no shi o / \*ga chisai kodomo ni wakaraseru no wa muzukashii.*  
 (It is hard to make a small child comprehend the death of a parent.)
- b. ジャックはリンダの気持ちを / \*が分かろうとしない。  
*Jakku wa Rinda no kimochi o / \*ga wakarō to shinai.*  
 (Jack does not try to understand Linda's feeling.)

#### 【Related Expression】

*Wakaru* indicates ‘the process of figuring something out’ and is different from *shiru* which basically means ‘to get some raw information from some outside source’. The primary difference between the two verbs is illustrated in the following sentences:

- [1] 友達に聞いて大野の結婚のことを知っていた / \*が分かっていた。  
*Tomodachi ni kiite Ōno no kekkon no koto o shitte ita / \*ga wakatte ita.*  
 (I knew about Ono's marriage by hearing it from a friend.)
- [2] よく考えれば分かります / \*知りますよ。  
*Yoku kangaereba wakarimasu / \*shirimasu yo.*  
 (If you think hard, you'll understand / \*know it.)
- [3] A : いくらか分かりますか。  
*Ikura ka wakarimasu ka.*  
 (Can you tell how much it is?)
- B : はい、調べれば分かります / \*知ります。  
*Hai, shirabereba wakarimasu / \*shirimasu.*  
 (Yes, I can tell / \*know it, if I check into it.)
- [4] A : 今晚何をするつもりですか。  
*Konban nani o suru tsumori desu ka.*  
 (What do you intend to do tonight?)



B : まだ分かりません / \*知りません。  
*Mada wakarimasen / \*shirimassen.*  
(I don't know yet.)

### wake da わけだ phr.

the speaker's conclusion obtained through deductive, logical judgment or calculation on the basis of what he has heard or read	no wonder; so it means that ~ ; that's why; should ~ ; I take it that ~ ; naturally 【REL. <i>hazu da</i> 】
--	---

#### ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Sentence <sub>1</sub>								
毎日 三時間 も 日本語 を 勉強して いる ん で す か。 <i>Mainichi sanjikan mo nihongo o benkyōshite iru n desu ka.</i>								
Sentence <sub>2</sub>								
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Vinf</th> <th colspan="2"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>よく <i>Yoku</i></td> <td>出来る <i>dekiru</i></td> <td>わけ で す ね。 <i>wake desu ne.</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(Are you studying Japanese (as long as) three hours every day? No wonder your Japanese is good.)</p>			Vinf			よく <i>Yoku</i>	出来る <i>dekiru</i>	わけ で す ね。 <i>wake desu ne.</i>
Vinf								
よく <i>Yoku</i>	出来る <i>dekiru</i>	わけ で す ね。 <i>wake desu ne.</i>						

(B)

Sentence <sub>1</sub>	Sentence <sub>2</sub>	Adj (i) inf	
あした 試験 で す か。 <i>Ashita shiken desu ka.</i>	じゃあ 今晩 <i>Jā konban</i>	忙しい <i>isogashii</i>	わけ で す ね。 <i>wake desu ne.</i>
(Do you have an exam tomorrow? Then, you must be busy tonight.)			

**Formation**

(i) {V / Adj} (i) inf わけ だ  
*wake da*

{話す / 話した} わけ だ (I take it that s.o. talks / talked)  
 {hanasu / hanashita} *wake da*

{食べる / 食べた} わけ だ (I take it that s.o. eats / ate)  
 {taberu / tabeta} *wake da*

{高い / 高かった} わけ だ (I take it that s.t. is / was expensive)  
 {takai / takakatta} *wake da*

(ii) Adj (na) stem {な / だった} わけ だ  
 {na / datta} *wake da*

{静かな / 静かだった} わけ だ (I take it that s.t. is / was quiet)  
 {shizukana / shizukadatta} *wake da*

(iii) N {という / だった} わけ だ  
 {to iu / datta} *wake da*

{先生 といふ / 先生 だった} わけ だ (I take it that s.o. is / was  
 {sensei to iu / sensei datta} *wake da* a teacher)

**Examples**

(a) スミスさんは十年間もテニスをしたのだから上手なわけだ。

*Sumisu-san wa jūnenkan mo tenisu o shita no da kara jōzuna wake da.*  
 (Mr. Smith has played tennis for ten years, so he should be good at it.)

(b) A : 来月から四か月フランスに行きます。

*Raigetsu kara yonkagetsu Furansu ni ikimasu.*

(I'll go to France next month and stay there for four months.)

B : すると、六月に帰ってくるわけですね。

*Suru to, rokugatsu ni kaette kuru wake desu ne.*

(Then, I take it that you're returning here in June.)

(c) 毎日プールで泳いでいるんですか。丈夫なわけですね。

*Mainichi pūru de oyoide iru n desu ka. Jōbuna wake desu ne.*

(Are you swimming in the pool everyday? No wonder you're healthy.)

(d) きのうは三時間しか寝ていない。道理で眠いわけだ。

*Kinō wa sanjikan shika nete inai. Dōri de nemui wake da.*

(Yesterday I slept only three hours. No wonder I am sleepy.)



- (e) えっ? 足立さんが入院したんですか。パーティーに来なかつたわけだ。  
*E? Adachi-san ga nyūinshita n desu ka. Pāti ni konakatta wake da.*  
 (What? Was Mr. Adachi hospitalized? No wonder he didn't come to the party.)
- (f) A: 山田さんは英語のことは何でも知っています。  
*Yamada-san wa eigo no koto wa nan demo shitte imasu.*  
 (Mr. Yamada knows everything about English.)
- B: 生き字引というわけですか。  
*Iki jibiki to iu wake desu ka.*  
 (You mean he is a living dictionary?)
- (g) 父の言うことが分からぬわけではないが、どうしても医者になりたくない。  
*Chichi no iu koto ga wakaranai wake de wa nai ga, dōshitemo isha ni naritakunai.*  
 (It is not that I don't understand what my father is saying; I simply don't want to become a medical doctor.)

### Notes

1. *Wake* can be used as a full noun, meaning 'reason' as in (1) and (2) below:
  - (1) 会社をやめたそうですが、そのわけを聞かせてください。  
*Kaisha o yameta sōdesu ga, sono **wake** o kikasete kudasai.*  
 (I heard that you quit the company. Let me hear the reason for that.)
  - (2) ここに来たわけは言えません。  
*Koko ni kita **wake** wa iemasan.*  
 (I can't tell you the reason why I came here.)
2. *Wake de* is the *te-form* of *wake da*.
  - (3) お母さんと二人だけですか。そういうわけで結婚出来ないんですか。  
*O-kā-san to futari dake desu ka. Sō iu **wake de** kekkon dekinai n desu ka.*  
 (It's only you and your mother? For that reason you can't get married, eh?)

### [Related Expression]

*Hazu da* 'expect' is similar but not identical to *wake da*. *Hazu da* can express a speaker's expectation when there is no preceding context; *wake da* cannot. In other words, *wake da* is highly dependent on verbal context.

(⇒ *hazu da*)



- [1] a. あしたは授業がないはず / \*わけですよ。  
*Ashita wa jugyō ga nai hazu / \*wake desu yo.*  
(I expect that there is no class tomorrow.)
- b. あの人は若いはず / \*わけですよ。  
*Ano hito wa wakai hazu / \*wake desu yo.*  
(I expect him to be young.)



**-ya 屋 suf.**

a suffix attached to names of stores, inns and Japanese-style restaurants or to persons engaged in certain occupations

store

**Examples**

(a) 花屋 (florist)

*hana-ya*

本屋 (bookstore)

*hon-ya*

薬屋 (drug store)

*kusuri-ya*

肉屋 (butcher)

*niku-ya*

パチンコ屋 (pinball parlor)

*pachinko-ya*

パン屋 (bakery)

*pan-ya*

魚屋 (fish monger)

*sakana-ya*

酒屋 (liquor store)

*saka-ya*

(b) 酒屋さんに電話してビールを三ダース持って来てもらった。

*Saka-ya-san ni denwashite biru o sandāsu motte kite moratta.*

(I called the man at the liquor store and had him bring me three dozen beers.)

(c) あの人は政治家ではなくて政治屋だ。

*Ano hito wa seijika de wa nakute seiji-ya da.*

(He is not a statesman but a mere politician.)

**Note**

The suffix *-ya* is sometimes used to downgrade a person. This use, however, is very restricted. Examples follow:



- (1) はずかしがり屋 (a shy person)  
*hazukashigari-ya*
- いぱり屋 (a haughty person)  
*ibari-ya*
- 気取り屋 (an affected person)  
*kidori-ya*

Note that these examples are all derived from *Vmasu + ya*, as in *hazukashigari + ya*, *ibari + ya* and *kidori + ya*.

### ya や conj.

a coordinate conjunction that is used  
 to list two or more items (nouns or  
 noun phrases) in an inexhaustive  
 fashion

and  
 【REL. *to<sup>1</sup>*; *toka*】

### ◆ Key Sentence

Subject				
Noun	や	Noun		
山田さん <i>Yamada-san</i>	や <i>ya</i>	小川さん <i>Ogawa-san</i>	が <i>ga</i>	来た / 来ました。 <i>kita / kimashita.</i>
(Mr. Yamada and Mr. Ogawa (and others) came.)				

### Examples

- (a) 山本さんやスミスさんがテニスをしている。  
*Yamamoto-san ya Sumisu-san ga tenisu o shite iru.*  
 (Mr. Yamamoto, Mr. Smith and others are playing tennis.)
- (b) 僕はビールやワインを飲んだ。  
*Boku wa biru ya wain o nondā.*  
 (I drank beer, wine and things like that.)
- (c) 土田さんは大川さんや鈴木さんに手紙を書いた。  
*Tsuchida-san wa Ōkawa-san ya Suzuki-san ni tegami o kaita.*



(Mr. Tsuchida wrote a letter to Mr. Okawa and Mr. Suzuki (and others).)

### Notes

1. *Ya* is used to combine two or more nouns or noun phrases. It cannot be used to combine predicates. Thus, (1) is unacceptable.

(1) \*きのうはデパートに行きましたや映画を見ました。

\**Kinō wa depāto ni ikimashita ya eiga o mimashita.*

(Yesterday I did things like going to a department store and seeing a movie.)

Instead of (1) we have to use  $\sim tari \sim tari suru$  to express an inexhaustive listing of predicates, as in (2). ( $\Rightarrow \sim tari \sim tari suru$ )

(2) きのうはデパートに行ったり映画を見たりしました。

*Kinō wa depāto ni ittari eiga o mitari shimashita.*

2. N *ya* N can be used as a noun phrase in any position where a single noun can be used. It can be used as the subject, as in KS and Ex. (a), or as the direct object as in Ex. (b), or as the indirect object as in Ex. (c).
3. N *ya* N cannot appear in the position of X in the X *ga* Y *da* construction, because *ga* in X *ga* Y *da* is a highly exhaustive listing marker.

( $\Rightarrow ga^1$ )

(3) \*ジェーンやミッシェルが学生です。

\**Jēn ya Missheru ga gakusei desu.*

(\*Jane and Michelle and only they (and others) are students.)

This idea can be conveyed using the construction in (4):

(4) 学生はジェーンやミッシェルです。

*Gakusei wa Jēn ya Missheru desu.*

(The students are Jane or Michelle (and others).)

### 【Related Expression】

*Toka* is used to make a rather *general*, inexhaustive listing of items as examples, whereas *ya* is used to make an inexhaustive listing of items *related to a specific time and place*. Consider the following examples:

[1] a. A: スミスさんは例えどんな日本食が好きですか。

*Sumisu-san wa tatoeba donna nihonshoku ga sukidesu ka.*

(Mr. Smith, what kind of Japanese cuisine do you like?  
Give me some examples.)



B : そうですね。てんぷらとか / ?やすきやきとか / ?や刺身ですね。  
*Sō desu ne. Tenpura toka / ?ya sukiyaki toka / ?ya sashimi desu ne.*  
 (Well, I'd say *tempura*, *sukiyaki* and *sashimi* (and others).)

b. A : きのう料理屋で何を食べましたか。

*Kinō ryōri-ya de nani o tabemashita ka.*

(What did you eat at the Japanese restaurant?)

B : てんぷらや / ???とかすきやきや / ???とか刺身を食べました。

*Tenpura ya / ???toka sukiyaki ya / ???toka sashimi o tabemashita.*

(I ate *tempura*, *sukiyaki* and *sashimi* (and others).)

## **yahari やはり      adv.**

an adverb indicating that an actual situation expectedly / anticipatively conforms to a standard based on past experience, comparison with other people, or common sense

still; also; after all; as expected;  
you know

【REL. *kekkyoku*; *sasuga (ni)*】  
【ANT. *masaka*】

### ◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			
ペイリーさん <i>Beiri-san</i>	は <i>wa</i>	やはり <i>yahari</i>	来なかつた / 来ませんでした ね。 <i>konakatta / kimasendeshita ne.</i>
(As expected, Mr. Bailey hasn't come, has he?)			

### Examples

(a) 雪子さんは今でもやはりきれいです。

*Yukiko-san wa ima demo yahari kireidesu.*

(Yukiko is still pretty.)

(b) お兄さんはテニスが上手ですが、弟さんもやっぱり上手ですよ。

*O-ni-san wa tenisu ga jōzudesu ga, otōto-san mo yappari jōzudesu yo.*



(The older brother is good at tennis, and the younger brother is also good at it.)

- (c) やはり日本のビールはおいしいですね。

*Yahari Nihon no biru wa oishiidesu ne.*

(As expected, Japanese beer is good.)

- (d) 僕はやはり結婚することにしました。

*Boku wa yahari kekkonsuru koto ni shimashita.*

(I've decided to get married, after all.)

### Notes

1. *Yahari* is a speaker-oriented adverb because its use is based on the speaker's subjective and presuppositional standards. Its overuse in conversation makes a discourse overly subjective, but its proper use in conversation makes a discourse sound like real Japanese.

2. *Yahari* can be positioned sentence-initially or sentence-medially, just like other adverbs. Thus, in KS *yahari* can be positioned in two ways.

- (1) a. やはりベイリーさんは来なかつたね。

*Yahari Beiri-san wa konakatta ne.*

- b. ベイリーさんはやはり来なかつたね。

*Beiri-san wa yahari konakatta ne.*

- c. ?ベイリーさんは来なかつたね, やはり。

?*Beiri-san wa konakatta ne, yahari.*

The sentence-initial *yahari* is more emphatic than the sentence-medial *yahari*. The sentence-final *yahari* as in (1c) sounds like an after-thought, and its usage is slightly marginal.

3. *Yappari* is a more emphatic and emotive version of *yahari*, owing to its glottal stop *-pp-*.

(⇒ Characteristics of Japanese Grammar, 8. Sound Symbolisms)

### 【Related Expressions】

I. *Sasuga* is an adverb / adj (*na*) whose meaning is similar to *yahari*. *Sasuga*, however, has only one meaning 'as expected' and indicates that the speaker is very much impressed or surprised by the given situation.

- [1] a. さすが(に)日本人はよく働く。

*Sasuga(ni) nihonjin wa yoku hataraku.*

(Truly Japanese people work hard!)



- b. さすが(に)アメリカは広い。  
**Sasuga(ni)** Amerika wa hiroi.  
 (Exactly as I expected, America is huge.)

*Sasuga(ni)* can replace *yahari* only when *yahari* means ‘as expected’, as in KS and Ex. (c).

II. The adverb *kekkyoku* ‘after all, in short’ can replace *yahari* only when the latter means ‘after all’, as in Ex. (d). More examples follow:

- [2] a. 色々薬を飲んだがやはり / 結局治らなかった。  
*Iroiro kusuri o nonda ga **yahari** / **kekkyoku** naoranakatta.*  
 (I took all kinds of medicine, but I wasn’t cured.)
- b. やはり / 結局行かないことにした。  
***Yahari** / **Kekkyoku** ikanai koto ni shita.*  
 (After all, I decided not to go there.)

In [2] *kekkyoku* sounds more formal than *yahari*, because the former is a Sino-Japanese word, while the latter is a Japanese word. Yet both can be used in conversational Japanese.

III. The adverb *masaka* ‘by no means, on no account, surely not’ is used when a given situation is far from the speaker’s expectation. In that sense, it is an antonym of *yahari*. *Masaka* is used with a negative predicate or is used all by itself, meaning ‘Unbelievable!, You don’t say! ’.

- [3] a. まさか小川さんが先生になるとは思わなかった。  
***Masaka** Ogawa-san ga sensei ni naru to wa omowanakatta.*  
 (I never expected Mr. Ogawa to become a teacher.)
- b. A: トムが入院したそうだ。  
*Tomu ga nyūinshita sōda.*  
 (I heard that Tom was hospitalized.)
- B: まさか！ きのうテニスをしていたよ。  
***Masaka!** Kinō tenisu o shite ita yo.*  
 (You don’t say! He was playing tennis yesterday.)



**-yasui やすい aux. adj. (i)**

S.t. or s.o. is easy to ~.

easy to; ready to; be apt to;  
prone to; do s.t. easily  
(ANT. -nikui)**◆ Key Sentence**

Topic (subject)	Vmasu	
この 漢字 <i>Kono kanji</i>	は <i>wa</i>	覚え <i>oboe</i> やすい / やすいです。 <i>yasui / yasuidesu.</i>
(This <i>kanji</i> is easy to memorize.)		

**Formation**Vmasu やすい  
*yasui*

話しやすい (easy to speak)

*hanashiyasui*

食べやすい (easy to eat)

*tabeyasui***Examples**

(a) あの人のうちには見つけやすい。

*Ano hito no uchi wa mitsukeyasui.*

(His house is easy to find.)

(b) 佐藤先生は話しやすいです。

*Satō-sensei wa hanashiyasuidesu.*

(Prof. Sato is easy to talk to.)

(c) このペンは書きやすい。

*Kono pen wa kakiyasui.*

(This pen is easy to write with.)

(d) 上野さんは一緒に仕事がしやすかった。

*Ueno-san wa isshoni shigoto ga shiyasukatta.*

(Mr. Ueno was easy to work with.)

(e) 豆腐は腐りやすい。

*Tōfu wa kusariyasui.*

(Tofu rots easily.)



**Notes**

1. Vmasu *yasui* is an *i*-type compound adjective and conjugates as an Adj (*i*), as seen in the following:

		Informal	Formal
Aff.	Nonpast	話しやすい <i>hanashiyasui</i>	話しやすいです <i>hanashiyasuidesu</i>
	Past	話しやすかった <i>hanashiyasukatta</i>	話しやすかったです <i>hanashiyasukattadesu</i>
Neg.	Nonpast	話しやすくない <i>hanashiyasukunai</i>	話しやすくないです <i>hanashiyasukunaidesu</i> 話しやすくありません <i>hanashiyasukuarimasen</i>
	Past	話しやすくなかった <i>hanashiyasukunakatta</i>	話しやすくなかったです <i>hanashiyasukunakattadesu</i> 話しやすくませんでした <i>hanashiyasukuarimasendeshita</i>

2. The following sentences (1) - (4) are closely related to Exs. (a) - (d).

- (1) あの人のうちを見つける。 (Cp. Ex. (a))

*Ano hito no uchi o mitsukeru.*

(One locates his house.)

- (2) 佐藤先生に話す。 (Cp. Ex. (b))

*Satō-sensei ni hanasu.*

(One talks to Prof. Sato.)

- (3) このペンで書く。 (Cp. Ex. (c))

*Kono pen de kaku.*

(One writes with this pen.)

- (4) 上野さんと一緒に仕事をした。 (Cp. Ex. (d))

*Ueno-san to isshoni shigoto o shita.*

(One worked together with Mr. Ueno.)

The noun phrases in (1) through (4) above, such as the direct object ~ *o*, the indirect object ~ *ni*, the instrumental phrase ~ *de*, and the comitative phrase ~ *to* are the sources for the topic (subject) of Exs. (a),



(b), (c) and (d), respectively. It is important to note that all these particles drop in the *yasui*-construction, and that the topic is the new subject of the *yasui*-construction.

3. If the subject of the *yasui*-construction is under focus, it is marked by *ga*, as in (5). ( $\Rightarrow ga^1$ )

(5) A : どの先生が話しやすいですか。

*Dono sensei ga hanashiyasuidesu ka.*

(Which professor is easy to talk to?)

B : 佐藤先生が話しやすいです。

*Satō-sensei ga hanashiyasuidesu.*

(Prof. Sato is easy to talk to.)

4. The antonym of *-yasui* is *-nikui* 'hard to ~', and is used in exactly the same way as *-yasui*. ( $\Rightarrow nikui$ )

## yo よ prt.

a sentence-final particle that indicates the speaker's (fairly) strong conviction or assertion about s.t. that is assumed to be known only to him

I tell you; I'm telling you; you know; contrary to what you think

### ◆ Key Sentence

Sentence	
<i>坂本さん は たばこ を 吸わない / 吸いません</i> <i>Sakamoto-san wa tabako o suwanai / suimasen</i>	よ。 yo.
(Mr. Sakamoto doesn't smoke, you know.)	

### Examples

(a) A : 日本語はおもしろいですか。

*Nihongo wa omoshiroidesu ka.*

(Is Japanese interesting?)



B : ええ、とてもおもしろいですよ。

*Ē, totemo omoshiroidesu yo.*

(Yes, it's very interesting, I tell you.)

(b) A : あの人はそんな本を買わないでしょう。

*Ano hito wa sonna hon o kawanai deshō.*

(He probably won't buy that sort of book.)

B : いいえ、買いますよ。

*Ie, kaimasu yo.*

(Yes, he'll buy it (contrary to what you think).)

### Notes

1. In this construction, the sentence preceding *yo* can be any informal or formal sentence except a question.

(1) a. \*読みかよ。

\**Yomu ka yo.*

b. \*読みますかよ。

\**Yomimasu ka yo.*

The sentences in (1) are unacceptable because the speaker's strong conviction and his act of questioning contradict each other. If (1a) is interpreted as a rhetorical question meaning 'I bet he isn't going to read it', however, the sentence becomes acceptable. But (1b), the formal version of (1a), cannot be a rhetorical question.

2. A sentence preceding *yo* can be an informal or a formal request. Examples:

(2) a. 読めよ。

*Yome yo.*

(Read it.)

b. 読みなさいよ。

*Yominasai yo.*

((From a superior to his inferior) Read it.)

c. 読んでくださいよ。

*Yonde kudasai yo.*

(Please read it.)

When *yo* is used in this way, the sentence becomes more forceful.



3. Another sentence-final particle *ne* may be attached to S *yo*, yielding the meaning 'I assert S and don't you agree?'. S *yo ne* is used when the speaker wishes to mitigate the force of his assertion by talking as if the content of S were also known to the hearer. ( $\Rightarrow$  *ne*, Note 5) Examples:

(3) a. この本はおもしろいですよね。

*Kono hon wa omoshiroi desu yo ne.*

(This book is interesting, right?)

b. アメリカまで十時間はかかりますよね。

*Amerika made jūjikan wa kakarimasu yo ne.*

(It takes at least 10 hours to get to America, right?)

S *yo ne* can also be used when the speaker is addressing someone who doesn't know about an asserted fact and there is another person nearby who is aware of it. In such circumstances, the speaker asks the person who shares the asserted fact for his agreement at the end of the sentence.

- (4) [The speaker is talking with someone about Mr. Kato, who is standing nearby.]

加藤さんはロシア語が出来ますよ、ね?

*Katō-san wa roshiago ga dekimasu yo. ne?*

(Mr. Kato can speak Russian... Can't you, Mr. Kato?)

4. In nonpolite, informal speech (i.e., intimate speech) sex differences are expressed by a combination of *yo* and the female speech markers *wa* and *no*. ( $\Rightarrow$  *wa<sup>2</sup>*; *no<sup>4</sup>*; Characteristics of Japanese Grammar, 7. Sentence-final Particles) The following chart illustrates the use of *yo* in informal male and female speech.

Male Speech	Female Speech
Vinf+ <i>yo</i>	Vinf+ <i>wa+yo</i>
Exs. 話す よ。 (I'll talk, you know.) <i>Hanasu yo.</i>	話す わ よ。 <i>Hanasu wa yo.</i>
話した よ。 (I talked, you know.) <i>Hanashita yo.</i>	話した わ よ。 <i>Hanashita wa yo.</i>
Adj (i)+ <i>yo</i>	Adj (i)+ <i>wa+yo</i>
Exs. 高い よ。 (It's expensive, you know.) <i>Takai yo.</i>	高い わ よ。 <i>Takai wa yo.</i>
高かった よ。 (It was expensive, you know.) <i>Takakatta yo.</i>	高かった わ よ。 <i>Takakatta wa yo.</i>



Male Speech	Female Speech
{Adj stem (na) / N} {da / datta} yo	{Adj (na) stem / N} {da / datta} wa yo
Exs. 静かだ よ。 (It's quiet, you know.) <i>Shizukada yo.</i>  静かだった よ。 (It was quiet, you know.) <i>Shizukadatta yo.</i>  先生 だ よ。 (He's a teacher, you know.) <i>Sensei da yo.</i>  先生 だつた よ。 (He was a teacher, you <i>Sensei datta yo.</i> know.)	静か (だ わ) よ。 <i>Shizuka (da wa) yo.</i>  静かだった わ よ。 <i>Shizukadatta wa yo.</i>  先生 (だ わ) よ。 <i>Sensei (da wa) yo.</i>  先生 だつた わ よ。 <i>Sensei datta wa yo.</i>
<i>n da (yo)</i>	<i>no (yo)</i>
Exs. 話す ん だ (よ)。 (I'll talk, you know.) <i>Hanasu n da (yo).</i>  話した ん だ (よ)。 (I talked, you know.) <i>Hanashita n da (yo).</i>  高い ん だ (よ)。 (It's expensive, you know.) <i>Takai n da (yo).</i>  高かった ん だ (よ)。 (It was expensive, <i>Takakatta n da (yo).</i> you know.)  静かな ん だ (よ)。 (It's quiet, you know.) <i>Shizukana n da (yo).</i>  静かだった ん だ (よ)。 (It was quiet, you <i>Shizukadatta n da (yo).</i> know.)  先生 な ん だ (よ)。 (He's a teacher, you <i>Sensei na n da (yo).</i> know.)  先生 だつた ん だ (よ)。 (He was a teacher, <i>Sensei datta n da (yo).</i> you know.)	話す の (よ)。 <i>Hanasu no (yo).</i>  話した の (よ)。 <i>Hanashita no (yo).</i>  高い の (よ)。 <i>Takai no (yo).</i>  高かった の (よ)。 <i>Takakatta no (yo).</i>  静かな の (よ)。 <i>Shizukana no (yo).</i>  静かだった の (よ)。 <i>Shizukadatta no (yo).</i>  先生 な の (よ)。 <i>Sensei na no (yo).</i>  先生 だつた の (よ)。 <i>Sensei datta no (yo).</i>

5. *Ne*, the Japanese tag question marker, is another frequently used sentence-final particle. ( $\Rightarrow ne$ ) *Yo* should not be confused with *ne*. In contrast to *yo*, *ne* is used when the speaker and the hearer share some specific information. For example, if the speaker is looking at a delicious-looking piece of cake with his friend, he would say (5b) instead of (5a).



- (5) a. \*おいしそうですよ。  
     \**Oishisōdesu yo.*  
     (Looks delicious, I tell you.)
- b. おいしそうですね。  
     *Oishisōdesu ne.*  
     (Looks delicious, doesn't it?)

On the other hand, if he is eating some delicious cake which his friend has not tasted, he would say (6a) rather than (6b).

- (6) a. おいしいですよ。  
     *Oishiidesu yo.*  
     (It's good, I tell you.)
- b. \*おいしいですね。  
     \**Oishiidesu ne.*  
     (It's good, isn't it?)

## yōda ようだ aux. adj. (na)

an auxiliary *na*-type adjective which  
 expresses the likelihood of s.t. / s.o.  
 or the likeness of s.t. / s.o. to s.t. /  
 s.o.

look like; look as if; be like;  
 appear; seem  
 [REL. *darō*; *rashii*; *sōda*<sup>1</sup>;  
 ~*sōda*<sup>2</sup>]

### ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		{V / Adj (i)} inf	
杉山さん <i>Sugiyama-san</i>	は <i>wa</i>	アメリカ へ <i>Amerika e</i>	行く <i>iku</i>
(It appears that Mr. Sugiyama is going to America.)			



(B)

Topic (subject)		Adj ( <i>na</i> ) stem		
上田さん <i>Ueda-san</i>	は <i>wa</i>	ボクシング が <i>bokushingu ga</i>	好き <i>suki</i>	な <i>na</i> ようだ / ようです。 <i>yōda</i> / <i>yōdesu</i> .
(Mr. Ueda appears to like boxing.)				

(C)

Topic (subject)	Noun		
あの 人 <i>Ano hito</i>	は <i>wa</i>	田中先生 <i>Tanaka-sensei</i>	の <i>no</i> ようだ / ようです。 <i>yōda</i> / <i>yōdesu</i> .
(That person looks like Prof. Tanaka.)			

(D)

A:	B:	Demonstrative	
石井さんはもう帰りましたか。 <i>Ishii-san wa mō kaerimashita ka.</i>	はい, <i>Hai,</i>	その <i>sono</i>	ようです。 <i>yōdesu</i> .
(Has Mr. Ishii gone home already?)	(Yes, it looks like it.)		

**Formation**

(i) {V / Adj (i)} inf ようだ  
*yōda*

{話す / 話した} ようだ (It seems that s.o. (will) talk / talked.)  
*{hanasu / hanashita}* *yōda*

{高い / 高かった} ようだ (It seems that s.t. is / was expensive.)  
*{takai / takakatta}* *yōda*

(ii) Adj (*na*) stem {な / だった} ようだ  
*{na / datta}* *yōda*

{静かな / 静かだった} ようだ (It seems that s.t. is / was quiet.)  
*{shizukana / shizukadatta}* *yōda*

(iii) N {の / だった} ようだ  
*{no / datta}* *yōda*



{先生 の / 先生 だった} ようだ (It seems that s.o. is / was a teacher.)  
 {sensei no / sensei datta} yōda

(iv) Demonstrative ようだ

yōda

その ようだ (It seems so.)

*sono* yōda

### Examples

(a) 木村さんはきのうお酒を飲んだようだ。

*Kimura-san wa kinō o-sake o nondā yōda.*

(It seems that Mr. Kimura drank *sake* yesterday.)

(b) この問題は学生にはちょっと難しいようだ。

*Kono mondai wa gakusei ni wa chotto muzukashii yōda.*

(This problem seems to be a little difficult for the students.)

(c) ここは昔学校だったようだ。

*Koko wa mukashi gakkō datta yōda.*

(It seems that this place used to be a school.)

(d) この酒は水のようだ。

*Kono sake wa mizu no yōda.*

(This *sake* is like water.)

### Notes

1. *Yōda* expresses the likelihood of s.t. / s.o., or the likeness of s.t. / s.o. to s.t. / s.o. In either case, when the speaker uses *yōda*, his statement is based on firsthand, reliable information (usually visual information).

2. *Yōda* can be used in counter-factual situations, as in Ex. (d). In this case, the adverb *marude* 'just' can be used for emphasis.

(1) 木村さんはまるで酒を飲んだようだ。

*Kimura-san wa marude sake o nondā yōda.*

(Mr. Kimura looks as if he had just drunk *sake*.)

(2) あの人はまるで日本人のようです。

*Ano hito wa marude nihonjin no yōdesu.*

(That person is just like a Japanese person.)

3. *Yōda* is a *na*-type adjective and has the prenominal form *yōna* and the adverbial form *yōni*. (⇒ *yōni*<sup>2</sup>) Examples:



(3) 今日田中さんのような人を見ました。

*Kyō Tanaka-san no yōna hito o mimashita.*

(I saw a man who looked like Mr. Tanaka.)

(4) スミスさんは日本人のよう日本語を話します。

*Sumisu-san wa nihonjin no yōni nihongo o hanashimasu.*

(Mr. Smith speaks Japanese like a Japanese.)

4. The colloquial version of *yōda* is *mitaida*, which is also a *na*-type adjective. The uses of *mitaida* are exactly the same as those for *yōda*. The formation rules are as follows:

(5) {V / Adj (i)} inf みたいだ  
*mitaida*

(6) {Adj (na) stem / N} {ø / だった} みたいだ  
 ø    *datta*    *mitaida*

### [Related Expressions]

The conjecture expressions S *darō*, S *rashii* and S *sōda*<sup>2</sup> convey ideas similar to S *yōda*. The differences are as follows :

- (A) S *darō* expresses the speaker's conjecture, but it is not necessarily based on any information. In other words, S *darō* can be used when the speaker is merely guessing.
- (B) S *rashii* usually expresses the speaker's conjecture based on what the speaker has heard or read. That is, the information his conjecture is based on is not firsthand.
- (C) S *sōda*<sup>2</sup> expresses the speaker's conjecture about what is going to happen or the current state of someone or something. Although this expression is based on what the speaker sees or feels, it is merely his guess and the degree of certainty in his statement is fairly low. Only Vmasu or Adj (i / na) stem can precede *sōda*<sup>2</sup>.
- (D) S *yōda* is also an expression which is usually based on what the speaker sees or saw. However, unlike S *sōda*<sup>2</sup>, this expression involves the speaker's reasoning process based on firsthand, reliable information and his knowledge. Thus, the degree of certainty in *yōda* is the highest of the four expressions compared here.

The following examples demonstrate the differences among these four expressions. The sentences in [1] present examples with the adjective *takai* 'expensive' before the conjecture auxiliaries.



- [1] a. この本は高いだろう。  
*Kono hon wa takai darō.*  
 (This book is probably expensive.)
- b. この本は高いらしい。  
*Kono hon wa takai rashii.*  
 ((From what I heard and / or read,) this book seems expensive.)
- c. この本は高そうだ。  
*Kono hon wa taka sōda.*  
 (This book looks expensive.)
- d. この本は高いようだ。  
*Kono hon wa takai yōda.*  
 ((Considering the prices of similar books,) this book seems expensive.)

Here, [1a] is mere conjecture. [1b] expresses the speaker's conjecture based on what he has heard and / or read. (If the sentence involves little conjecture, it is almost like hearsay. ( $\Rightarrow sōda^1$ )) [1c] is also the speaker's guess, but in this case it is based on what he sees. [1d] expresses the speaker's judgment about the price of the book. Note that in [1d] the speaker knows the book's price; therefore, this is not a guess. [2] provides examples with the noun *sensei* 'teacher' preceding the conjecture words. The differences in meaning among the sentences here are the same as those explained in [1], except that [2c] is ungrammatical.

- [2] a. あの人は先生だろう。  
*Ano hito wa sensei darō.*  
 (I guess he is a teacher.)
- b. あの人は先生らしい。  
*Ano hito wa sensei rashii.*  
 ((From what I heard,) he seems to be a teacher.)
- c. \*あの人は先生そうだ。  
 \**Ano hito wa sensei sōda.*
- d. あの人は先生のようだ。  
*Ano hito wa sensei no yōda.*  
 ((Judging from how he looks,) he seems to be a teacher. / He looks as if he were a teacher.)

In [3], the verb *furu* 'fall' precedes the conjecture auxiliaries.



[3] a. 今日は雨が降るだろう。

*Kyō wa ame ga furu darō.*

(I guess it will rain today.)

b. 今日は雨が降るらしい。

*Kyō wa ame ga furu rashii.*

((From what I heard,) it seems that it will rain today.)

c. 今にも雨が降りそうだ。

*Imanimo ame ga furi sōda.*

(It looks like it's going to rain at any moment.)

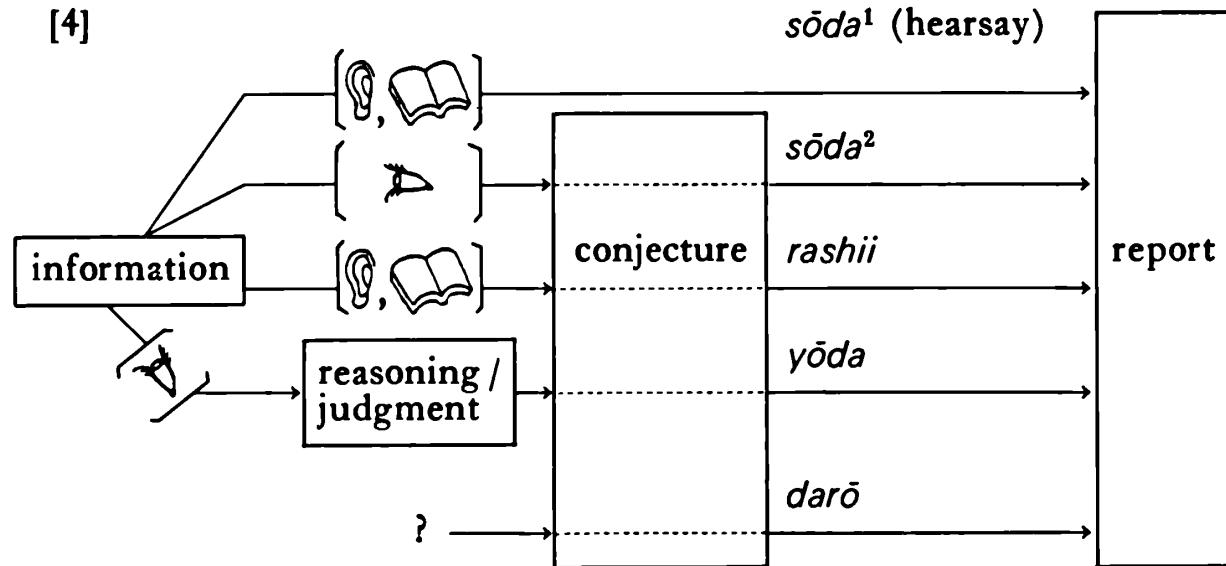
d. この辺はよく雨が降るようだ。

*Kono hen wa yoku ame ga furu yōda.*

((Judging from the abundance of trees and moss,) it appears that it rains a lot around here.)

Here, [3a] is the speaker's guess. [3b] is the speaker's conjecture based on what he heard or it is almost like hearsay. [3c] is also the speaker's guess, but, in this case, he is probably looking at the sky. Like [3c], [3d] is based on what the speaker sees, but in this case the information is reliable, and involves the speaker's reasoning process.

The diagram in [4] summarizes the characteristics of the four conjecture expressions and *sōda*<sup>1</sup> (hearsay).



**yōni<sup>1</sup> ように conj.**

~~~~~ { Do s.t. in such a way that ~. } so that

**◆ Key Sentences**

(A)

|                                              |                    |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Vinf·nonpast(potential)                      |                    |                                                      |
| 読める<br><i>Yomeru</i>                         | ように<br><i>yōni</i> | 字をきれいに書いてください。<br><i>ji o kireini kaite kudasai.</i> |
| (Please write neatly so that I can read it.) |                    |                                                      |

(B)

|                                                         |                        |                    |                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
|                                                         | Vinf·neg·nonpast       |                    |                                                    |
| かぜを<br><i>Kaze o</i>                                    | ひかない<br><i>hikanai</i> | ように<br><i>yōni</i> | 気をつけている / います。<br><i>ki o tsukete iru / imasu.</i> |
| (I'm taking care of myself so that I don't catch cold.) |                        |                    |                                                    |

**Formation**

Vinf·nonpast{pot / neg} ように  
*yōni*

{話せる / 話さない} ように (so that s.o. can talk / does not talk)  
{*hanaseru / hanasanai*} *yōni*

{食べられる / 食べない} ように (so that s.o. can eat / does not eat)  
{*taberareru / tabenai*} *yōni*

**Examples**

- (a) 僕が分かるようにスミスさんはゆっくり英語を話してくれた。  
*Boku ga wakaru yōni Sumisu-san wa yukkuri eigo o hanashite kureta.*  
(Mr. Smith spoke English slowly so that I could understand him.)
- (b) 遅れないようにタクシーで行きました。  
*Okurenai yōni takushi de ikimashita.*  
(I went there by taxi so that I wouldn't be late.)
- (c) 病気が治るように薬を飲んだ。  
*Byōki ga naoru yōni kusuri o nondai.*  
(I took medicine so that I would (lit. recover from illness) get well.)



(d) 子供が本を読むようにおもしろそうな本を買って来た。

*Kodomo ga hon o yomu yōni omoshirosōna hon o katta kita.*

(I bought some interesting-looking books so that my child would read books.)

### Notes

1. Although *yōni*<sup>1</sup> can be used with almost any informal, nonpast verb, it is most commonly used with potential verb forms (as in KS(A) and Ex. (a)) and negative verb forms (as in KS(B) and Ex. (b)).
2. ~*yōni iu* ‘tell s.o. to do s.t.’, ~*yōni naru* ‘reach the point where ~’ and ~*yōni suru* ‘try to ~’ are idiomatic uses of *yōni*.  
(⇒ ~*yōni iu*; ~*yōni naru*; ~*yōni suru*)

## ***yōni*<sup>2</sup> ように aux. adj. (na)**

{ an adverbial form of *yōda* } as; like

### ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

|                          | Vinf             |                      |                                        |
|--------------------------|------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 私 が<br><i>Watashi ga</i> | 言 う<br><i>iu</i> | よ う に<br><i>yōni</i> | 書 いて く だ さ い。<br><i>kaite kudasai.</i> |

(Please write it down as I tell you.)

(B)

| Topic (subject)   |                | Vinf·past             |                       |                                                                             |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 今 日<br><i>Kyō</i> | は<br><i>wa</i> | 春 に<br><i>haru ni</i> | な っ た<br><i>natta</i> | よ う に<br><i>yōni</i> 暖 か い / 暖 か い で す。<br><i>atatakai / atatakai desu.</i> |

(Lit. Today is as warm as if it had become spring.)



(C)

| Topic (subject)                                          | Noun    |                        |         |             |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------------------|---------|-------------|
| ドロシー<br>Doroshi                                          | は<br>wa | 日本人<br><i>nihonjin</i> | の<br>no | ように<br>yōni |
| 日本語を話す / 話します。<br><i>nihongo o hanasu / hanashimasu.</i> |         |                        |         |             |
| (Dorothy speaks Japanese like a Japanese.)               |         |                        |         |             |

**Formation**

(i) {V / Adj (i)} inf ように  
yōni

{話す / 話した} ように (as s.o. talks / talked; as if s.o. (had) talked)  
{hanasu / hanashita} yōni

{高い / 高かった} ように (as s.t. is / was expensive; as if s.t. were /  
{takai / takakatta} yōni had been expensive)

(ii) Adj (na) stem {な / だった} ように  
{na / datta} yōni

{静かな / 静かだった} ように (as s.t. is / was quiet; as if s.t. were /  
{shizuka na / shizuka datta} yōni had been quiet)

(iii) N {の / だった} ように  
{no / datta} yōni

{先生 の / 先生 だった} ように (like a teacher / as s.o. was a teacher;  
{sensei no / sensei datta} yōni as if s.o. were / had been a teacher)

**Examples**

(a) 前に話したように私は来月会社をやめます。

*Mae ni hanashita yōni watashi wa raigetsu kaisha o yamemasu.*

(As I told you before, I'm going to quit the company next month.)

(b) 上田さんのように走れますか。

*Ueda-san no yōni hashiremasu ka.*

(Can you run like Mr. Ueda?)

(c) 若い時のようには元気がなくなった。

*Wakai toki no yōni wa genki ga nakunatta.*

(I don't feel as strong as I used to when I was young.)



## 556 *yōni*<sup>2</sup> / ~*yōni iu*

- (d) 土井さんはいつものように朝六時に起きた。  
*Doi-san wa itsumo no yōni asa rokuji ni okita.*  
(As usual Mr. Doi got up at six in the morning.)
- (e) 兄がスポーツが上手なように弟も上手だ。  
*Ani ga supōtsu ga jōzuna yōni otōto mo jōzuda.*  
(Just like the older brother, the younger brother is also good at sports.)
- (f) 猫がかわいいように犬もかわいい。  
*Neko ga kawaii yōni inu mo kawaii.*  
(Lit. Just like cats are cute, so are dogs. (=Dogs are cute, just like cats.))

### Notes

1. *Yōni*<sup>1</sup> expresses purpose but *yōni*<sup>2</sup> doesn't; it expresses similarity, especially in appearance. (⇒ *yōni*<sup>1</sup>)
2. *Yōni*<sup>2</sup> can express a counterfactual situation as in KS(B). The adverb *marude* 'just' is often used to emphasize counterfactuality. Examples follow:
  - (1) a. まるで生き返ったように元気になった。  
*Marude ikikaetta yōni genkini natta.*  
(Lit. He recovered as if he had risen from the dead.)
  - b. あの子はまるで大人のようないふす。  
*Ano ko wa marude otona no yōni hanasu.*  
(That child speaks as if he were an adult.)

~*yōni iu* ~ように言う phr.

Tell s.o. in such a way that he will do s.t.

tell ~ to ~ ; say ~ in such a way



## ◆ Key Sentence

| Topic (subject)                                 | Indirect Object                                  |                      | Direct Object  |                       | Vinf·nonpast                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 先生<br><i>Sensei</i>                             | は<br><i>wa</i>                                   | 学生<br><i>gakusei</i> | に<br><i>ni</i> | 宿題<br><i>shukudai</i> | を<br><i>o</i> する<br><i>suru</i> |
|                                                 |                                                  |                      |                |                       |                                 |
| ようやく<br><i>yōni</i>                             | 言った / 言いました。<br><i>itta</i> / <i>iimashita</i> . |                      |                |                       |                                 |
| (The teacher told his students to do homework.) |                                                  |                      |                |                       |                                 |

### Formation

Vinf·nonpast ように 言う  
*yōni iu*

話す ように 言う (tell s.o. to talk)  
*hanasu yōni iu*

食べる ように 言う (tell s.o. to eat)  
*taberu yōni iu*

### Examples

(a) 坂本さんは雪江に図書館の前で待っているように言った。

*Sakamoto-san wa Yukie ni toshokan no mae de matte iru yōni itta.*

(Mr. Sakamoto told Yukie to be waiting in front of the library.)

(b) すみませんが、小林さんにあした朝九時にここへ来るよう言ってくださいませんか。

*Sumimasen ga, Kobayashi-san ni ashita asa kuji ni koko e kuru yōni itte kudasaimasen ka.*

(I'm sorry, but could you please tell Mr. Kobayashi to come here at 9 o'clock tomorrow morning?)

(c) 私は聞こえるようにはっきり言ったんですが…

*Watashi wa kikoeru yōni hakkiri itta n desu ga...*

(I said it in such a way that it was clearly audible, but...)

### Notes

1. *Yōni iu* can be used either as an indirect imperative as in KS and Exs. (a) and (b), or to mean 'say in such a way that ~,' i.e., the use of *yōni*.<sup>1</sup>



(⇒ *yōni*<sup>1</sup>) In the former case, the verb must be a controllable verb—a verb that represents something controllable by human volition, such as *suru* ‘do’, *matsu* ‘wait’, *kuru* ‘come’, *yomu* ‘read’ and *kau* ‘buy’. In the latter case the verb must be a noncontrollable verb, such as *wakaru* ‘understand’, *kikoeru* ‘be audible’ (Ex. (c)), or a potential form of verbs.

2. When *yōni iu* is used as an indirect imperative, the verb *iu* can be replaced by other verbs such as *tanomu* ‘ask’, *meijiru* ‘order’ and *motomeru* ‘request’.

- (1) 田中さんは山本さんにすぐ来るよう言った / 賴んだ / 命じた。

*Tanaka-san wa Yamamoto-san ni sugu kuru yōni itta / tanonda / meijita.*

(Mr. Tanaka told / asked / ordered Mr. Yamamoto to come (to his place) immediately.)

The direct imperative versions of (1) are something like (2). Notice that there is more than one direct imperative form if the directive verb is *iu*.

- (2) a. 田中さんは山本さんに「すぐ来てください(来なさい / 来い)。」と言った。

*Tanaka-san wa Yamamoto-san ni “Sugu kite kudasai (kinasai / koi).” to itta.*

(Mr. Tanaka said to Mr. Yamamoto, “Please come (Come here right away.”)

- b. 田中さんは山本さんに「すぐ来い。」と命じた。

*Tanaka-san wa Yamamoto-san ni “Sugu koi.” to meijita.*

(Mr. Tanaka ordered Mr. Yamamoto, “Come here right away!”)

- c. 田中さんは山本さんに「すぐ来てください。」と頼んだ。

*Tanaka-san wa Yamamoto-san ni “Sugu kite kudasai.” to tanonda.*

(Mr. Tanaka asked Mr. Yamamoto, “Please come here right away.”)

~yōni naru ~ようになる phr.

{ Some change takes place gradually. }

reach the point where ~; come to ~; it has come to be that ~; have finally become

【REL. *koto ni naru*; ~naku naru; ~yōni suru】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

| Topic (subject)                                                  |                | Vinf·nonpast               |                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| ジャクソンさん<br><i>Jakuson-san</i>                                    | は<br><i>wa</i> | 日本語 が<br><i>nihongo ga</i> | 話せる<br><i>hanaseru</i> |
| (Mr. Jackson has reached the point where he can speak Japanese.) |                |                            |                        |

(B)

| Topic (subject)                                                                                                                   |                | Vinf·nonpast·neg                  |                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 林さん<br><i>Hayashi-san</i>                                                                                                         | は<br><i>wa</i> | 酒 を 飲まない<br><i>sake o nomanai</i> | ようになつた / なりました。<br><i>yōni natta / narimashita.</i> |
| (Lit. Mr. Hayashi has reached the point where he does not drink <i>sake</i> . (=Mr. Hayashi doesn't drink <i>sake</i> any more.)) |                |                                   |                                                     |

Formation

Vinf·nonpast ようになる  
*yōni naru*

{話す / 話さない} ようになる (s.o. reaches the point where he talks / {*hanasu* / *hanasanai*} *yōni naru* doesn't talk)

{食べる / 食べない} ようになる (s.o. reaches the point where he eats / {*taberu* / *tabenai*} *yōni naru* doesn't eat)

Examples

(a) 難しい日本語が読めるようになりました。

*Muzukashii nihongo ga yomeru yōni narimashita.*

(I am finally able to read difficult Japanese.)



- (b) パットは私と話さないようになった。  
*Patto wa watashi to hanasanai yōni natta.*  
 (Pat doesn't talk with me any more.)
- (c) もうすぐおもしろさが分かるようになりますよ。  
*Mō sugu omoshirosa ga wakaru yōni narimasu yo.*  
 (You'll soon come to understand the fun of it, I tell you.)
- (d) この道は今通れないようになっている。  
*Kono michi wa ima tōrenai yōni natte iru.*  
 (Lit. This street has reached the point where people cannot pass. (=At present we cannot use this street.))

**Notes**

1. Although ~*yōni naru* usually indicates a gradual change, when it is preceded by an affirmative verb the change may not take place gradually. Thus, an adverb such as *kyūni* 'suddenly' can co-occur with an affirmative verb and ~*yōni naru*, as seen in (1).

- (1) うちの子は最近急に勉強するようになったんですよ。  
*Uchi no ko wa saikin kyūni benkyōsuru yōni natta n desu yo.*  
 (Lit. Recently our child has suddenly reached the point where he studies. (=Recently our child suddenly started to study.))

When ~*yōni naru* is preceded by a negative verb (as in KS(B)), however, the change must take place gradually. If the change is not gradual, ~*naku naru* is used in place of ~*nai yōni naru*.

(See Related Expression II.)

2. *Yōni natte iru* emphasizes a current state that has come about after a long process, as in Ex. (d).
3. There are two ways to negate this construction, but the meanings are completely different. The verb before *yōni* can be negated, as in (2a), or the verb *naru* can be negated, as in (2b).

- (2) a. 漢字が覚えられないようになった。  
*Kanji ga oboerarenai yōni natta.*  
 (I've reached the point where I can't memorize *kanji*.)
- b. 漢字が覚えられるようにならなかつた。  
*Kanji ga oboerareru yōni naranakatta.*  
 (I haven't reached the point where I can memorize *kanji*.)



(2a) means that the speaker can't memorize *kanji* any more, and (2b) means that he is not yet able to memorize *kanji*.

4. *Yōni* by itself can be used as an adverbial phrase, along with main verbs other than *naru*. (⇒ *yōni*<sup>1</sup>; *yōni*<sup>2</sup>)

### [Related Expressions]

I. *Koto ni naru* 'it has been decided that ~' and ~*yōni naru* are related expressions in that both of them indicate some change, but they differ in that the former implies a passive decision, while the latter suggests a change brought about by a long process. Compare the following sentences:

- [1] a. 私は大阪に転勤することに / \*ようになりました。  
*Watashi wa Ōsaka ni tenkinsuru koto ni / \*yōni narimashita.*  
 (It has been decided that I will transfer to Osaka.)
- b. 私は英語が話せるように / \*ことになりました。  
*Watashi wa eigo ga hanaseru yōni / \*koto ni narimashita.*  
 (I've reached the point where I can speak English.)

II. When the verb before ~*yōni naru* is negated, as in KS(B), this construction can be compared to the ~*naku naru* construction.

- [2] a. 林さんは酒を飲まないようになった。  
*Hayashi-san wa sake o nomanai yōni natta.* (=KS(B))  
 (Mr. Hayashi doesn't drink *sake* any more.)
- b. 林さんは酒を飲まなくなつた。  
*Hayashi-san wa sake o nomanaku natta.*  
 (Mr. Hayashi doesn't drink *sake* any more.)

The *nai yōni natta* version in [2a] implies a more gradual change than the *naku natta* version in [2b]. Thus, adverbs such as *kyūni* 'suddenly' or *totsuzen* 'suddenly' can co-occur with [2b] but not with [2a].



## ~yōni suru ~ようにする phr.

S.o. causes some circumstantial or behavioral change to take place.

do ~ in such a way that ~; see to it that ~; make sure that ~; bring it about that ~  
【REL. ~yōni naru】

## ◆ Key Sentence

|                                                |                       | Vinf·nonpast            |                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 私 は<br><i>Watashi wa</i>                       | 毎日<br><i>mainichi</i> | 運動する<br><i>undōsuru</i> | よう に す る / し ま す。<br><i>yōni suru /shimasu.</i> |
| (I'll make sure that I do exercises everyday.) |                       |                         |                                                 |

## Formation

Vinf·nonpast ように す る  
*yōni suru*

{話す / 話さない} ように す る  
*hanasu / hanasanai* *yōni suru*

(s.o. makes sure that he / s.o. else talks / doesn't talk)

{食べる / 食べない} ように す る  
*taberu / tabenai* *yōni suru*

(s.o. makes sure that he / s.o. else eats / doesn't eat)

## Examples

(a) 出来るだけ日本語で話すようにしています。

*Dekiru dake nihongo de hanasu yōni shite imasu.*

(I'm making sure I speak in Japanese as much as possible.)

(b) 山川には会わないようにした。

*Yamakawa ni wa awanai yōni shita.*

(I've made sure that I won't see Yamakawa.)

(c) 分からないことは先生に聞くようにしている。

*Wakaranai koto wa sensei ni kiku yōni shite iru.*

(I make a point of asking my teacher about things I don't understand.)

(d) 每朝八時に来るようにしてください。

*Maiasa hachiji ni kuru yōni shite kudasai.*

(Please make sure that you come at eight every morning.)

(e) うしろからもよく見えるようにしました。

*Ushiro kara mo yoku mieru yōni shimashita.*



(I've seen to it that people can see from the rear seats, too.)

(f) 成績がよくなるようにした。

*Seiseki ga yoku naru yōni shita.*

(I've made sure that my grades will improve.)

### Notes

1. ~yōni shite iru expresses s.o.'s habitual act of making sure that he or s.o. else will do (or will not do) s.t., as shown in Exs. (a) and (c).

2. The subjects in the *yōni* clause and in the main clause may or may not be identical. In (1a), the subjects are different, but in (1b), they are identical.

(1) a. ジョンはメアリーが行けるようにした。

*Jon wa Meari ga ikeru yōni shita.*

(John has seen to it that Mary can go there.)

b. ジョンは行けるようにした。

*Jon wa ikeru yōni shita.*

(John has seen to it that he (=John) can go there.)

3. There are two ways to negate this construction, but the meaning changes according to the pattern. The verb before *yōni* can be negated as in (2a), or the verb *suru* can be negated as in (2b).

(2) a. 小川は山本が勉強出来ないようにした。

*Ogawa wa Yamamoto ga benkyō deki nai yōni shita.*

(Ogawa made sure that Yamamoto couldn't study.)

b. 小川は山本が勉強出来るように(は)しなかった。

*Ogawa wa Yamamoto ga benkyō dekire yōni (wa) shinakatta.*

(Ogawa didn't make sure that Yamamoto could study.)

In (2a) Ogawa is directly involved in preventing Yamamoto from studying, but in (2b) Ogawa just didn't bother to assist Yamamoto's studying.

4. When an Adj (*i* / *na*) or N is used before *yōni suru*, the verb *naru* is used as follows:

(i) Adj (*i*) stem く なる ように する  
*ku naru yōni suru*

{高く なる / 高くなく なる} ように する (make sure s.t. be-  
{takaku naru / takakunaku naru} *yōni suru* comes / won't be-  
come expensive)



(ii) {Adj (na) stem / N} に な る よ う に す る  
*ni naru yōni suru*

静か {に / で は な く / じ ゃ な く} な る よ う に す る  
*shizuka {ni / de wa naku / janaku} naru yōni suru*  
 (make sure s.t. is / won't be quiet)

先 生 {に / で は な く / じ ゃ な く} な る よ う に す る  
*sensei {ni / de wa naku / janaku} naru yōni suru*  
 (make sure s.o. is / won't be a teacher)

### [Related Expression]

~yōni naru ‘reach the point where’ is the intransitive counterpart of *yōni suru*. The former only indirectly implies human efforts behind some change that will occur or has occurred, but the latter straightforwardly indicates human efforts. For example, in [1a] the speaker can get up early in the morning almost effortlessly, but in [1b] he has to make sure that he can get up early in the morning.

[1] a. 朝早く起きられるようになりました。

*Asa hayaku okirareru yōni narimashita.*

(I am finally able to get up early in the morning.)

b. 朝早く起きられるようにしています。

*Asa hayaku okirareru yōni shite imasu.*

(I am making sure that I can get up early in the morning.)

### yori<sup>1</sup> より      prt.

a particle which indicates that s.t. / s.o. is being compared with s.t. / s.o.

than; rather ~ than ~ ; more ~ than ~

【REL. ~ hō ga ~ yori】

### ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

| Topic (subject)       | Noun           |                          | Predicate                                                                        |
|-----------------------|----------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 日本語<br><i>Nihongo</i> | は<br><i>wa</i> | スペイン語<br><i>supeingo</i> | より (も)<br><i>yori (mo)</i> おもしろい / おもしろいです。<br><i>omoshiroi / omoshiroidesu.</i> |

(Japanese is more interesting than Spanish.)



(B)

| Subject                                      |                 | Sentence <sub>2</sub> |                               | Predicate                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sentence <sub>1</sub>                        |                 |                       |                               |                                                                    |
| 車 で 行く<br><i>Kuruma de iku</i>               | ほう<br><i>hō</i> | が<br><i>ga</i>        | バス で 行く<br><i>basu de iku</i> | より (も)<br><i>yori (mo)</i> 安い / 安いです。<br><i>yasui / yasuidesu.</i> |
| (Going by car is cheaper than going by bus.) |                 |                       |                               |                                                                    |

(C)

| Topic (subject)                              | Predicate <sub>1</sub>   |                            | Predicate <sub>2</sub>                               |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 私 は<br><i>Watashi wa</i>                     | 旅行する<br><i>ryokōsuru</i> | より (も)<br><i>yori (mo)</i> | うち に いたい / いたいです。<br><i>uchi ni itai / itaidesu.</i> |
| (I'd rather stay at home than go on a trip.) |                          |                            |                                                      |

(D)

| Noun / Sentence                            |                   |                                |                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| これ<br><i>Kore</i>                          | より<br><i>yori</i> | (ほか (に))<br><i>(hoka (ni))</i> | 方法 は ない / ありません。<br><i>hōhō wa nai / arimasen.</i>    |
| (There is no other way than this.)         |                   |                                |                                                       |
| バス で 行く<br><i>Basu de iku</i>              | より<br><i>yori</i> | (ほか (に))<br><i>(hoka (ni))</i> | 仕方 が ない / ありません。<br><i>shikata ga nai / arimasen.</i> |
| (There is no other way than to go by bus.) |                   |                                |                                                       |

**Formation**

(A) KS(A) / KS(D):

N より  
*yori*これ より (than this)  
*kore yori*

(B) KS(B) / KS(C) / KS(D):

( i ) {V / Adj (i)} inf·nonpast より  
*yori*

話す より (than talking)

*hanasu yori*

高い より (than being expensive)

*takai yori*

(ii) Adj (*na*) stem な より

*na yori*

静かな より (than being quiet)

*shizukana yori*

(iii) N で ある より

*de aru yori*

先生 で ある より (than being a teacher)

*sensei de aru yori*

### Examples

(a) 漢字はひらがなより難しい。

*Kanji wa hiragana yori muzukashii.*

(*Kanji* is more difficult than *hiragana*.)

(b) 林さんは私より速く走れる。

*Hayashi-san wa watashi yori hayaku hashireru.*

(Mr. Hayashi can run faster than I can.)

(c) 僕はステーキより魚の方が好きだ。

*Boku wa sutēki yori sakana no hō ga sukida.*

(I prefer fish to steak.)

(d) 図書館で勉強する方がうちで勉強するよりよく出来る。

*Toshokan de benkyōsuru hō ga uchi de benkyōsuru yori yoku dekiru.*

(Studying at the library is more productive than studying at home.)

(e) それは赤と言うより茶色に近かった。

*Sore wa aka to iu yori chairo ni chikakatta.*

(That was closer to brown than to red (lit. rather than saying it was red).)

(f) 日本語を勉強したかったら、アメリカの学校で勉強するより日本へ行きなさい。

*Nihongo o benkyōshitakattara, Amerika no gakkō de benkyōsuru yori Nihon e ikinasai.*

(If you want to study Japanese, go to Japan rather than studying at a school in America.)



**Notes**

1. Either a noun phrase or a sentence precedes *yori*. When verbs precede *yori*, they are usually nonpast. However, there are a few cases where past tense verbs are used, as in (1).

(1) その試験は思ったよりやさしかった。

*Sono shiken wa omotta yori yasashikatta.*

(The exam was easier than I thought.)

2. In KS(A), KS(B) and KS(C), *mo* is optional after *yori* and does not change the meaning of the sentence.

**yori<sup>2</sup> より      prt.**

|                                                                     |                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a particle which indicates a set point<br>in terms of space or time | in ~ of; inside; outside; before;<br>after<br><b>【REL. <i>kara</i><sup>1</sup>】</b> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**◆Key Sentence**

| Topic (subject)                           | Noun (location / time)              |                     |                   | Noun (location / time) |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| メキシコ<br><i>Mekishiko</i>                  | は<br><i>wa</i>                      | 赤道<br><i>sekidō</i> | より<br><i>yori</i> | 北<br><i>kita</i>       |
|                                           | Predicate                           |                     |                   |                        |
| に<br><i>ni</i>                            | ある / あります。<br><i>aru / arimasu.</i> |                     |                   |                        |
| (Mexico is located north of the equator.) |                                     |                     |                   |                        |

**Examples**

(a) この線より内側に入ってはいけません。

*Kono sen yori uchigawa ni haitte wa ikemasen.*

(You must not get inside this line.)

(b) 三時より前に来てください。

*Sanji yori mae ni kite kudasai.*

(Please come before three o'clock.)



(c) これより先はバスがありません。

*Kore yori saki wa basu ga arimasen.*

(There's no bus service from here (lit. beyond this point).)

### Note

The use of *yori* as a marker indicating a set point in terms of location can be extended to more abstract locations, as in (1).

(1) 八十点より上は合格です。

*Hachijutten yori ue wa gōkaku desu.*

(Lit. Eighty point up is a pass. (=The passing mark is eighty.))

### 【Related Expression】

*Kara* can be used in place of *yori*<sup>2</sup> when *kara* indicates a set point in space, as in [1].

( $\Leftrightarrow$  *kara*<sup>1</sup>)

[1] この線から / より内側に入ってはいけません。

*Kono sen kara / yori uchigawa ni haitte wa ikemasen.*

(You must not get inside this line.)

When *yori* indicates a point in time, however, *kara* can replace it only if it indicates a starting time. Thus, *kara* in [2a] is grammatical, but *kara* in [2b] is not.

[2] a. 三時より / から後に来てください。

*Sanji yori / kara ato ni kite kudasai.*

(Please come after three o'clock.)

b. 三時より / \*から前に来てください。

*Sanji yori / \*kara mae ni kite kudasai.*

(Please come before three o'clock.)

It is also noted that *yori*<sup>2</sup> implies a comparison of two things, while *kara* has no such implication.



## ~yō to omou ~ようと思う phr.

The speaker desires or decides to do  
s.t.

~ think ~ will  
【REL. *tsumori*】

## ◆ Key Sentences

(A)

| Topic (subject)                                 |                | Vinf·vol                        |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| 私<br><i>Watashi</i>                             | は<br><i>wa</i> | 日本歴史 を<br><i>Nihonrekishi o</i> | 読もう<br><i>yomō</i> |
| (I think I will read Japanese history (books).) |                |                                 |                    |

(B)

| Topic (subject)                                |                | Vinf·nonpast               |                   |                  |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 私<br><i>Watashi</i>                            | は<br><i>wa</i> | もう 酒 を<br><i>mō sake o</i> | 飲む<br><i>nomu</i> | まい<br><i>mai</i> |
| (I think I will not drink alcohol any longer.) |                |                            |                   |                  |

## Formation

KS(A):

Vinf·vol と 思う  
*to omou*

話そう と 思う (I think I will talk.)  
*hanasō to omou*

食べよう と 思う (I think I will eat.)  
*tabeyō to omou*

KS(B):

Vinf·nonpast まい と 思う  
*mai to omou*

話すまい と 思う (I think I will not talk.)  
*hanasumai to omou*

食べるまい と 思う (I think I will not eat.)  
*taberumai to omou*

**Examples**

- (a) 夏休みに日本アルプスに登ろうと思ひます。  
*Natsuyasumi ni Nihon Arupusu ni noborō to omoimasu.*  
(I think I will climb the Japan Alps during summer vacation.)
- (b) 森さんはワープロ (=ワードプロセッサー)を買おうと思つています。  
*Mori-san wa wāpuro (=wādo purosessā) o kaō to omotte imasu.*  
(Mr. Mori is thinking of buying a word processor.)
- (c) 僕はあのひとはもう話すまいと思う。  
*Boku wa ano hito to wa mō hanasumai to omou.*  
(I think I won't talk to that person any more.)

**Notes**

- When the subject is not the first person, as in Ex. (b), the nonpast form of *omou* cannot be used. Thus, the following sentence is unacceptable.
  - \*森さんはワープロを買おうと思う / 思ひます。  
*\*Mori-san wa wāpuro o kaō to **omou** / **omoimasu**.*

The reason why (1) is unacceptable is that *omou* represents an internal feeling of the speaker alone. Therefore, when the subject is the third person, *omou* has to be replaced by the stative *omotte iru* which means ‘he (=the third person subject) has indicated that he feels ~, in such a way that the speaker can see and / or hear what he feels’. Observe the following sentence.

- (2) 私 / \*父 / \*山下さんはその映画を見ようと思ひます。  
*Watashi / \*Chichi / \*Yamashita-san wa sono eiga o miyō to omoimasu.*  
(I / My father / Mr. Yamashita think(s) I / he will see that movie.)

It is also to be noted that ~*yō* to *omou* cannot be used as a question.

- (3) ??あの本を読もうと思ひますか。  
*??Ano hon o yomō to omoimasu ka.*  
(Do you think you will read that book?)

- The negative version of ~*yō* to *omou* is Vinf·nonpast ~*mai* to *omou*, as seen in KS(B) and Ex. (c).
- The verb that precedes *yō* must be a verb that represents something controllable by human volition. Thus, the following sentences are all ungrammatical, because the verbs are noncontrollable.

- (4) a. \*車を買えようと思う。

*\*Kuruma o kaeyō to omou.*

(I think I can buy a car.)

- Cp. 車を買えると思う。

*Kuruma o kaeru to omou.*

(I think I can buy a car.)

- b. \*お金をもらったら喜ぼうと思う。

*\*O-kane o morattara yorokobō to omou.*

(I think I'll be happy if I get money.)

- Cp. お金をもらったら喜ぶだろうと思う。

*O-kane o morattara yorokobu darō to omou.*

(I think I will probably rejoice if I receive money.)

- c. \*雨に降られようと思う。

*\*Ame ni furareyō to omou.*

(I think I will be caught in the rain.)

- Cp. 雨に降られると思う。

*Ame ni furareru to omou.*

(I think I will be caught in the rain.)

A passive verb can be used with ~yō to omou, however, if the speaker perceives the passive situation as somehow controllable, as in (5).

- (5) たまには先生にほめられようと思う。

*Tama ni wa sensei ni homerareyō to omou.*

(Lit. I think I will do my best to be praised by my teacher once in a while.)



***zutsu* ずつ *prt.***

a particle that indicates equal distribution of quantity

by; at a time

**◆ Key Sentence**

| Topic (subject)                            | Direct Object |  | Quantifier           |                    |                                   |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------|--|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 私 は 漢字 を 每日<br>Watashi wa kanji o mainichi |               |  | 五つ<br><i>itsutsu</i> | ずつ<br><i>zutsu</i> | 覚える / 覚えます。<br>oboeru / oboemasu. |
| (I memorize five <i>kanji</i> every day.)  |               |  |                      |                    |                                   |

**Examples**

- (a) 毎月三冊ずつ本を買っています。  
*Maitsuki sansatsu zutsu hon o katte imasu.*  
(I'm buying three books per month.)
- (b) ゴルフが少しづつ上手になって來た。  
*Gorufu ga sukoshi zutsu jōzuni natte kita.*  
(I have become a better golfer bit by bit.)
- (c) 私は子供達に本を二冊ずつやった。  
*Watashi wa kodomotachi ni hon o nisatsu zutsu yatta.*  
(I gave two books to each of the children.)
- (d) どのクラスにも女子学生が六人ずついた。  
*Dono kurasu ni mo joshigakusei ga rokunin zutsu ita.*  
(There were six girl students in each class.)

**Notes**

1. The particle *zutsu* is used only after a quantifier (=an expression of quantity).
2. A sentence without *zutsu* can express virtually the same fact. Compare KS and Ex. (a) with (1a) and (1b), respectively.

- (1) a. 私は漢字を毎日五つ覚える。

*Watashi wa kanji o mainichi itsutsu oboeru.*  
(I memorize five *kanji* every day.)

b. 每月三冊本を買っています。

*Maitsuki sansatsu hon o katte imasu.*

(I'm buying three books every month.)

A sentence with *zutsu* focuses on equal distribution of quantity, but a sentence without *zutsu* doesn't.



# **Appendices**

## Appendices

### Appendix 1 Basic Conjugations

|                                          | inf., neg., nonpast           | formal, nonpast (masu-form) <sup>2</sup>   | inf., nonpast (dictionary form) | conditional                | volitional                                | te-form                         |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Group 1 verbs<sup>1</sup></b>         |                               |                                            |                                 |                            |                                           |                                 |
| 書く (write)<br><i>kaku</i>                | 書かない<br><i>kakanai</i>        | 書きます<br><i>kakimasu</i>                    | 書く<br><i>kaku</i>               | 書けば<br><i>kakeba</i>       | 書こう<br><i>kakō</i>                        | 書いて<br><i>kaite</i>             |
| 行く (go)<br><i>iku</i>                    | 行かない<br><i>ikanai</i>         | 行きます<br><i>ikimasu</i>                     | 行く<br><i>iku</i>                | 行けば<br><i>ikeba</i>        | 行こう<br><i>ikō</i>                         | 行って <sup>3</sup><br><i>itte</i> |
| 話す (talk)<br><i>hanasu</i>               | 話さない<br><i>hanashanai</i>     | 話します<br><i>hanashi-masu</i>                | 話す<br><i>hanasu</i>             | 話せば<br><i>hanaseba</i>     | 話そう<br><i>hanasō</i>                      | 話して<br><i>hanashite</i>         |
| 待つ (wait)<br><i>matsu</i>                | 待たない<br><i>matanai</i>        | 待ちます<br><i>machi-masu</i>                  | 待つ<br><i>matsu</i>              | 待てば<br><i>mateba</i>       | 待とう<br><i>matō</i>                        | 待って<br><i>matte</i>             |
| 死ぬ (die)<br><i>shinu</i>                 | 死なない<br><i>shinanai</i>       | 死にます<br><i>shini-masu</i>                  | 死ぬ<br><i>shinu</i>              | 死ねば<br><i>shineba</i>      | 死のう<br><i>shinō</i>                       | 死んで<br><i>shinde</i>            |
| 読む (read)<br><i>yomu</i>                 | 読まない<br><i>yomanai</i>        | 読みます<br><i>yomi-masu</i>                   | 読む<br><i>yomu</i>               | 読めば<br><i>yomeba</i>       | 読もう<br><i>yomō</i>                        | 読んで<br><i>yonde</i>             |
| 乗る (ride)<br><i>noru</i>                 | 乗らない<br><i>noranai</i>        | 乘ります<br><i>nori-masu</i>                   | 乗る<br><i>noru</i>               | 乗れば<br><i>noreba</i>       | 乗ろう<br><i>norō</i>                        | 乗って<br><i>notte</i>             |
| ある (exist)<br><i>aru</i>                 | ない <sup>3</sup><br><i>nai</i> | あります<br><i>arimasu</i>                     | ある<br><i>aru</i>                | あれば<br><i>areba</i>        | (あろう) <sup>4</sup><br><i>(arō)</i>        | あって<br><i>atte</i>              |
| 買う (buy)<br><i>kau</i>                   | 買わない<br><i>kawanai</i>        | 買います<br><i>kaimasu</i>                     | 買う<br><i>kau</i>                | 買えба<br><i>kaeba</i>       | 買おう<br><i>kaō</i>                         | 買って<br><i>katte</i>             |
| 泳ぐ (swim)<br><i>oyogu</i>                | 泳がない<br><i>oyoganai</i>       | 泳ぎます<br><i>oyogi-masu</i>                  | 泳ぐ<br><i>oyogu</i>              | 泳げば<br><i>oyogeba</i>      | 泳ごう<br><i>oyogō</i>                       | 泳いで<br><i>oyoide</i>            |
| 呼ぶ (call)<br><i>yobu</i>                 | 呼ばない<br><i>yobanai</i>        | 呼びます<br><i>yobi-masu</i>                   | 呼ぶ<br><i>yobu</i>               | 呼べば<br><i>yobeba</i>       | 呼ぼう<br><i>yobō</i>                        | 呼んで<br><i>yonde</i>             |
| おっしゃる(say (Honorific))<br><i>ossharu</i> | おっしゃらない<br><i>ossharanai</i>  | おっしゃいます <sup>5</sup><br><i>osshai-masu</i> | おっしゃる<br><i>ossharu</i>         | おっしゃれば<br><i>osshareba</i> | (おっしゃろう) <sup>4</sup><br><i>(ossharō)</i> | おっしゃって<br><i>osshatte</i>       |

| inf., past                      | inf., neg., past                    | passive <sup>6</sup>                             | causative <sup>6</sup>                           | potential <sup>6</sup>     | imperative                              |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 書いた<br><i>kaita</i>             | 書かなかった<br><i>kakanakatta</i>        | 書かれる<br><i>kakareru</i>                          | 書かせる<br><i>kakaseru</i>                          | 書ける<br><i>kakeru</i>       | 書け<br><i>kake</i>                       |
| 行った <sup>3</sup><br><i>itta</i> | 行かなかった<br><i>ikanakatta</i>         | 行かれる<br><i>ikareru</i>                           | 行かせる<br><i>ikaseru</i>                           | 行ける<br><i>ikeru</i>        | 行け<br><i>ike</i>                        |
| 話した<br><i>hanashita</i>         | 話さなかった<br><i>hanasana-katta</i>     | 話される<br><i>hanasareru</i>                        | 話させる<br><i>hanasaseru</i>                        | 話せる<br><i>hanaseru</i>     | 話せ<br><i>hanase</i>                     |
| 待った<br><i>matta</i>             | 待たなかった<br><i>matana-katta</i>       | 待たれる<br><i>matareru</i>                          | 待たせる<br><i>mataseru</i>                          | 待てる<br><i>materu</i>       | 待て<br><i>mate</i>                       |
| 死んだ<br><i>shinda</i>            | 死ななかった<br><i>shinana-katta</i>      | 死なれる<br><i>shinareru</i>                         | 死なせる<br><i>shinaseru</i>                         | 死ねる<br><i>shineru</i>      | 死ね<br><i>shine</i>                      |
| 読んだ<br><i>yonda</i>             | 読まなかった<br><i>yomana-katta</i>       | 読まれる<br><i>yomareru</i>                          | 読ませる<br><i>yomaseru</i>                          | 読める<br><i>yomeru</i>       | 読め<br><i>yome</i>                       |
| 乗った<br><i>notta</i>             | 乗らなかった<br><i>norana-katta</i>       | 乗られる<br><i>norareru</i>                          | 乗らせる<br><i>noraseru</i>                          | 乗れる<br><i>noreru</i>       | 乗れ<br><i>nore</i>                       |
| あつた<br><i>atta</i>              | なかつた <sup>3</sup><br><i>nakatta</i> |                                                  |                                                  |                            | (あれ) <sup>4</sup><br>(are)              |
| 買った<br><i>katta</i>             | 買わなかつた<br><i>kawana-katta</i>       | 買われる<br><i>kawareru</i>                          | 買わせる<br><i>kawaseru</i>                          | 買える<br><i>kaeru</i>        | 買え<br><i>kae</i>                        |
| 泳いだ<br><i>oyoida</i>            | 泳がなかつた<br><i>oyogana-katta</i>      | 泳がれる<br><i>oyogareru</i>                         | 泳がせる<br><i>oyogaseru</i>                         | 泳げる<br><i>oyogeru</i>      | 泳げ<br><i>oyoge</i>                      |
| 呼んだ<br><i>yonda</i>             | 呼ばなかつた<br><i>yobana-katta</i>       | 呼ばれる<br><i>yobareru</i>                          | 呼ばせる<br><i>yobaseru</i>                          | 呼べる<br><i>yoberu</i>       | 呼べ<br><i>yobe</i>                       |
| おっしゃつた<br><i>osshattia</i>      | おっしゃらなかつた<br><i>ossharana-katta</i> | (おっしゃられ<br>る) <sup>4</sup><br>(osshara-<br>reru) | (おっしゃら<br>せる) <sup>4</sup><br>(osshara-<br>seru) | おっしゃれる<br><i>osshareru</i> | おっしゃ<br>い <sup>4</sup><br><i>osshai</i> |

|                                  | inf., neg., nonpast  | formal, nonpast ( <i>masu</i> -form) | inf., nonpast (dictionary form) | conditional          | volitional          | <i>te</i> -form    |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Group 2 verbs<sup>1</sup></b> |                      |                                      |                                 |                      |                     |                    |
| 見る(see)<br><i>miru</i>           | 見ない<br><i>minai</i>  | 見ます<br><i>mimasu</i>                 | 見る<br><i>miru</i>               | 見れば<br><i>mireba</i> | 見よう<br><i>miyō</i>  | 見て<br><i>mite</i>  |
| 寝る(go to bed)<br><i>neru</i>     | 寝ない<br><i>nenai</i>  | 寝ます<br><i>nemasu</i>                 | 寝る<br><i>neru</i>               | 寝れば<br><i>nereba</i> | 寝よう<br><i>neyō</i>  | 寝て<br><i>nete</i>  |
| <b>Irregular verbs</b>           |                      |                                      |                                 |                      |                     |                    |
| する(do)<br><i>suru</i>            | しない<br><i>shinai</i> | します<br><i>shimasu</i>                | する<br><i>suru</i>               | すれば<br><i>sureba</i> | しよう<br><i>shiyō</i> | して<br><i>shite</i> |
| 来る(come)<br><i>kuru</i>          | こない<br><i>konai</i>  | きます<br><i>kimasu</i>                 | くる<br><i>kuru</i>               | くれば<br><i>kureba</i> | こよう<br><i>koyō</i>  | きて<br><i>kite</i>  |

<sup>1</sup> Group 1 verbs are those whose negative, informal stems end with the [a] sound. Group 2 verbs are those whose negative, informal stems end with [i] or [e].

<sup>2</sup> The complete conjugations of formal forms are as follow:

|               |                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| nonpast       | (書き)ます<br>( <i>kaki</i> ) <i>masu</i>             |
| neg., nonpast | (書き)ません<br>( <i>kaki</i> ) <i>masen</i>           |
| past          | (書き)ました<br>( <i>kaki</i> ) <i>mashita</i>         |
| neg., past    | (書き)ませんでした<br>( <i>kaki</i> ) <i>masendeshita</i> |
| volitional    | (書き)ましょう<br>( <i>kaki</i> ) <i>mashō</i>          |

<sup>3</sup> Irregular conjugation.

<sup>4</sup> This form is usually not used.

<sup>5</sup> Some honorific verbs (*irassharu* ‘go; come; be’, *nasaru* ‘do’, *gozaru* ‘be’) are irregular in the *masu*-form and the imperative form.

<sup>6</sup> Passive verbs, causative verbs and potential verbs are all Group 2 verbs.

<sup>7</sup> There are also imperative forms like *Miyo* ‘See’ and *Seyo* ‘Do.’ These are used only in written Japanese.

| inf., past         | inf., neg., past           | passive <sup>6</sup>    | causative <sup>6</sup>  | potential <sup>6</sup>  | imperative          |
|--------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 見た<br><i>mita</i>  | 見なかった<br><i>minakatta</i>  | 見られる<br><i>mirareru</i> | 見させる<br><i>misaseru</i> | 見られる<br><i>mirareru</i> | 見ろ!<br><i>miro</i>  |
| 寝た<br><i>neta</i>  | 寝なかった<br><i>nenakatta</i>  | 寝られる<br><i>nerareru</i> | 寝させる<br><i>nesaseru</i> | 寝られる<br><i>nerareru</i> | 寝ろ<br><i>nero</i>   |
| した<br><i>shita</i> | しなかった<br><i>shinakatta</i> | される<br><i>sareru</i>    | させる<br><i>saseru</i>    | できる<br><i>dekiru</i>    | しろ!<br><i>shiro</i> |
| きた<br><i>kita</i>  | こななかった<br><i>konakatta</i> | こられる<br><i>korareru</i> | こさせる<br><i>kosaseru</i> | こられる<br><i>korareru</i> | こい<br><i>koi</i>    |

|                                          | inf.,<br>nonpast   | inf., neg.,<br>nonpast   | inf., past               | inf., neg.,<br>past            | condition                 |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>i</i> -Adjectives <sup>8</sup>        |                    |                          |                          |                                |                           |
| 大きい <sup>9</sup><br>(big)<br><i>ōkii</i> | 大きい<br><i>ōkii</i> | 大きくない<br><i>ōkikunai</i> | 大きかった<br><i>ōkikatta</i> | 大きくなかった<br><i>ōkikunakatta</i> | 大きければ<br><i>ōkikereba</i> |
| いい <sup>10</sup><br>(good)<br><i>ii</i>  | いい<br><i>ii</i>    | よくない<br><i>yokunai</i>   | よかったです<br><i>yokatta</i> | よくなかった<br><i>yokunakatta</i>   | よければ<br><i>yokereba</i>   |

<sup>8</sup> Auxiliary adjectives -tai (want to), -rashii (seem), -yasui (easy to), -nikui (hard to), -nai (not) are *i*-adjectives.

<sup>9</sup> *Ōkii* (big) and *chisai* (small) can be either *i*-adjectives or *na*-adjectives. When they are used as *na*-adjectives, they are rather emotive.

<sup>10</sup> /i is an irregular *i*-adjective. /i is usually used as the inf., nonpast form.

| <i>na</i> -<br>Adjectives <sup>11</sup> |                         |                                                                                     |                               |                                                                                                 |                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 静かだ<br>(quiet)<br><i>shizukada</i>      | 静かだ<br><i>shizukada</i> | 静かではない<br><i>shizuka-dewanai</i><br><br>静かじやない <sup>12</sup><br><i>shizukajanai</i> | 静かだった<br><i>shizuka-datta</i> | 静かではなかった<br><i>shizuka-dewanakatta</i><br><br>静かじやなかった <sup>12</sup><br><i>shizukajanakatta</i> | 静かなら(ば)<br><i>shizukanara(ba)</i><br><br>静かであれば<br><i>shizukadeareba</i> |
| Copula                                  |                         |                                                                                     |                               |                                                                                                 |                                                                          |
| だ<br>(be)<br><i>da</i>                  | だ<br><i>da</i>          | ではない<br><i>dewanai</i><br><br>じやない <sup>12</sup><br><i>janai</i>                    | だった<br><i>datta</i>           | ではなかった<br><i>dewanakatta</i><br><br>じやなかった <sup>12</sup><br><i>janakatta</i>                    | なら(ば)<br><i>nara(ba)</i><br><br>であれば<br><i>deareba</i>                   |

<sup>11</sup> Borrowed adjectives (including Chinese-origin adjectives) and such auxiliary adjectives as -yōda (look like), -mitaida (look like), -sōda (look) are all *na*-adjectives.

| <i>te-form</i>          | adverbial               | prenominal                   | formal,<br>nonpast         | formal,<br>neg.,<br>nonpast                                                                       | formal,<br>past                 | formal,<br>neg.,<br>past                                                                                              |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 大きくて<br><i>ōkikute</i>  | 大きく<br><i>ōkiku</i>     | 大きい<br><i>ōkii</i>           | 大きいです<br><i>ōkiidesu</i>   | 大きくありません <sup>13</sup><br><i>ōkikuari-masen</i><br>大きくないです <sup>13</sup><br><i>ōkikunai-desu</i>  | 大きかったです<br><i>ōkikatta desu</i> | 大きくありませんでした <sup>13</sup><br><i>ōkikuari-masen-deshita</i><br>大きくなかったです <sup>13</sup><br><i>ōkikuna-kattadesu</i>     |
| よくて<br><i>yokute</i>    | よく<br><i>yoku</i>       | いい<br><i>ii</i>              | いいです<br><i>iidesu</i>      | よくありません <sup>13</sup><br><i>yokuari-masen</i><br>よくないです <sup>13</sup><br><i>yokunai-desu</i>      | よかったです<br><i>yokatta-desu</i>   | よくありました <sup>13</sup><br><i>yokuari-masende-shita</i><br>よくなかったです <sup>13</sup><br><i>yoku-nakatta-desu</i>           |
| 静かで<br><i>shizukade</i> | 静かに<br><i>shizukani</i> | 静かな<br><i>shizukana</i>      | 静かです<br><i>shizukadesu</i> | 静かではありません<br><i>shizuka-dewaari-masen</i><br>静かじやありません <sup>12</sup><br><i>shizukaja-arimasen</i> | 静かでした<br><i>shizukadeshita</i>  | 静かではありませんでした<br><i>shizuka-dewaari-masen-deshita</i><br>静かじやませんでした <sup>12</sup><br><i>shizukaja-arimasen-deshita</i> |
| で<br><i>de</i>          | —<br>—                  | の / である<br><i>no / dearu</i> | です<br><i>desu</i>          | ではありません<br><i>dewaari-masen</i><br>じやありません <sup>12</sup><br><i>jaarima-sen</i>                    | でした<br><i>deshita</i>           | ではありませんでした<br><i>dewaari-masen-deshita</i><br>じやませんでした <sup>12</sup><br><i>jaarima-sendeshita</i>                     |

<sup>12</sup> *Ja* is the colloquial form of *dewa*.

<sup>13</sup> ~naidesu / ~nakattadesu expresses a stronger feeling of negation than ~arimasen / ~arimasendeshita.

## Appendix 2 Semantic Classification of Verbs and Adjectives

### A. Stative verbs:

A stative verb usually does not appear with the auxiliary verb *iru*.

できる (can do); いる (need)  
*dekiru*                                    *iru*

(All the potential verbs are stative. (e.g., 飲める (can drink))  
*nomeru*

### B. Continual verbs:

A continual verb with the auxiliary verb *iru* expresses the progressive aspect.

食べる (eat); 飲む (drink); 歩く (walk); 走る (run); 踊る (dance);  
*taberu*      *nomu*      *aruku*      *hashiru*      *odoru*

歌う (sing); 泳ぐ (swim); 待つ (wait); 話す (talk); 聞く (hear);  
*utau*      *oyou*      *matsu*      *hanasu*      *kiku*

読む (read); 書く (write); 見る (see); 泣く (cry); 教える (teach);  
*yomu*      *kaku*      *miru*      *naku*      *oshieru*

見せる (show); 使う (use); 作る (make); 笑う (laugh); 休む (rest)  
*miseru*      *tsukau*      *tsukuru*      *warau*      *yasumu*

勉強する (study); 飛ぶ (fly); 考える (think); 会う (meet); 住む (live);  
*benkyōsuru*      *tabu*      *kangaeru*      *au*      *sumu*

### C. Stative-continual verbs:

A stative-continual verb can be either a stative verb or a continual verb.

見える (be visible); 聞こえる (be audible); 分かる (understand); 違う  
*mieru*                    *kikoeru*                    *wakaru*                    *chigau*  
(differ); 似合う (become; be suitable)  
                              *niau*

#### D. Punctual verbs:

A punctual verb with the auxiliary verb *iru* expresses a repeated action or a state after an action was taken or something took place.

知る (get to know); 死ぬ (die); 忘れる (forget); 貸す (lend); 借りる  
*shiru*                    *shinu*                    *wasureru*                    *kasu*                    *kariru*  
(borrow); 跳ぶ (jump); 打つ (hit); 出る (get out); 入る (enter);  
*tobu*                    *utsu*                    *deru*                    *hairu*

|                                        |                               |                                  |                             |                      |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 立つ (stand);<br>tatsu                   | 座る (sit down);<br>suwaru      | 起きる (get up);<br>okiru           | 結婚する (marry);<br>kekconsuru |                      |
| 行く (go);<br>iku                        | 来る (come);<br>kuru            | 帰る (return);<br>kaeru            | 言う (say);<br>iu             | あげる (give);<br>ageru |
| もらう (get);<br>moraau                   | 疲れる (get tired);<br>tsukareru | 困る (get into trouble);<br>komaru | 乗る (get on);<br>noru        |                      |
| 始まる (begin (v.i.));<br>hajimaru        | 終わる (end (v.i.));<br>owaru    | 開く (open (v.i.));<br>aku         | 閉まる (close<br>shimaru)      |                      |
| (v.i.);<br>なる (become);<br>naru        | 着く (arrive);<br>tsuku         | 晴れる (clear up);<br>hareru        | 覚える<br>oboeru               |                      |
| (remember);<br>寝る (go to bed);<br>neru | 止まる (stop (v.i.))<br>tomaru   | ける (kick);<br>keru               | 付く<br>tsuku                 |                      |
| (be attached);<br>合う (match);<br>au    |                               | 止める (stop (v.t.))<br>yameru      |                             |                      |

#### E. Continual-punctual verbs:

A continual-punctual verb can be either a continual verb or a punctual verb.

|                    |                    |                                |                            |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 着る (wear);<br>kiru | 取る (take);<br>toru | 変わる (change (v.i.));<br>kawaru | 注文する (order)<br>chūmonsuru |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|

#### F. Non-volitional verbs:

A non-volitional verb usually does not take the volitional form, the imperative form and the potential form. Non-volitional verbs are classified into emotive verbs and non-emotive verbs.

##### F-1. Non-volitional-emotive verbs:

Most of the non-volitional-emotive verbs can take an NP-o. ( $\Rightarrow o^4$ )

|                                |                            |                           |              |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| よろこぶ (be pleased);<br>yorokobu | 悲しむ (be sad);<br>kanashimu | 怒る (be angry);<br>okoru   | きらう<br>kirau |
| (hate);<br>konomu              | 好む (like);<br>komaru       | 苦しむ (suffer)<br>kurushima |              |

(Komaru and kurushima do not take an NP-o. They take either an NP-de or an NP-ni.)

##### F-2. Non-volitional-non-emotive verbs:

|                               |                             |                            |                            |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| できる (can do);<br>dekiru       | いる (need);<br>iru           | 知る (get to know);<br>shiru | 見える (be visible);<br>mieru |
| 聞こえる (be audible);<br>kikoeru | 分かる (understand);<br>wakaru | 違う (differ);<br>chigau     | 似合う<br>niau                |

(become, be suitable); 疲れる (get tired)  
*tsukareru*

#### G. Reciprocal verbs:

A reciprocal verb takes the particle *to* for the direct object.

|                                       |                                    |                         |                          |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 結婚する (marry);<br><i>kekconsuru</i>    | けんかする (fight);<br><i>kenkasuru</i> | 会う (meet);<br><i>au</i> | 合う (match);<br><i>au</i> |
| ぶつかる (bump into);<br><i>butsukaru</i> | 相談する (consult)<br><i>sōdansuru</i> |                         |                          |

#### H. Movement verbs:

A movement verb can take *Vmasu ni* to express a purpose.

|                                        |                           |                              |                             |                              |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 行く (go);<br><i>iku</i>                 | 来る (come);<br><i>kuru</i> | 帰る (return);<br><i>kaeru</i> | 入る (enter);<br><i>hairu</i> | 出る (get out);<br><i>deru</i> |
| (立ち)寄る (stop by)<br><i>(tachi)yoru</i> |                           |                              |                             |                              |

### Appendix 3 Pairs of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs

| Intransitive Verb        | Transitive Verb |                         |                     |
|--------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>A 1. —eru → —asu</b>  |                 |                         |                     |
| 出る<br><i>deru</i>        | (get out)       | 出す<br><i>dasu</i>       | (take out)          |
| 逃げる<br><i>nigeru</i>     | (run away)      | 逃がす<br><i>nigasu</i>    | (let run away)      |
| 溶ける<br><i>tokeru</i>     | (dissolve)      | 溶かす<br><i>tokasu</i>    | (dissolve)          |
| 枯れる<br><i>kareru</i>     | (wither)        | 枯らす<br><i>karasu</i>    | (let wither)        |
| <b>A 2. —eru → —yasu</b> |                 |                         |                     |
| 冷える<br><i>hieru</i>      | (get cold)      | 冷やす<br><i>hiyasu</i>    | (make cold)         |
| 生える<br><i>haeru</i>      | (grow)          | 生やす<br><i>hayasu</i>    | (grow)              |
| <b>B. —iru → —osu</b>    |                 |                         |                     |
| 起きる<br><i>okiru</i>      | (get / wake up) | 起こす<br><i>okosu</i>     | (get / wake up)     |
| 降りる<br><i>oriru</i>      | (get off)       | 降ろす<br><i>orosu</i>     | (take / bring down) |
| 落ちる<br><i>ochiru</i>     | (drop)          | 落とす<br><i>otosu</i>     | (drop)              |
| 過ぎる<br><i>sugiru</i>     | (elapse)        | 過ごす<br><i>sugosu</i>    | (spend)             |
| <b>C. —u → —eru</b>      |                 |                         |                     |
| 開く<br><i>aku</i>         | (open)          | 開ける<br><i>akeru</i>     | (open)              |
| 届く<br><i>todoku</i>      | (reach)         | 届ける<br><i>todokeru</i>  | (deliver)           |
| 縮む<br><i>chijimu</i>     | (shrink)        | 縮める<br><i>chijimeru</i> | (shrink)            |
| 育つ<br><i>sodatsu</i>     | (grow)          | 育てる<br><i>sodateru</i>  | (raise)             |
| 立つ<br><i>tatsu</i>       | (stand)         | 立てる<br><i>tateru</i>    | (stand)             |

D.  $-ru \rightarrow -seru$ 

|                   |            |                      |                 |
|-------------------|------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| 乗る<br><i>noru</i> | (get on)   | 乗せる<br><i>noseru</i> | (put on)        |
| 寄る<br><i>yoru</i> | (approach) | 寄せる<br><i>yosero</i> | (let come near) |

E.  $-ru \rightarrow -su$ 

|                       |            |                       |          |
|-----------------------|------------|-----------------------|----------|
| 帰(返)る<br><i>kaeru</i> | (return)   | 帰(返)す<br><i>kaesu</i> | (return) |
| 通る<br><i>tōru</i>     | (pass)     | 通す<br><i>tōsu</i>     | (pass)   |
| 回る<br><i>mawaru</i>   | (turn)     | 回す<br><i>mawasu</i>   | (turn)   |
| 直る<br><i>naoru</i>    | (be fixed) | 直す<br><i>naosu</i>    | (fix)    |

F.  $-reru \rightarrow -su$ 

|                            |               |                         |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 離れる<br><i>hanareru</i>     | (be detached) | 離す<br><i>hanasu</i>     | (detach)            |
| 倒れる<br><i>taoreru</i>      | (fall down)   | 倒す<br><i>taosu</i>      | (push / knock down) |
| つぶれる<br><i>tsubureru</i>   | (crush)       | つぶす<br><i>tsibusu</i>   | (crush)             |
| よごれる<br><i>yogoreru</i>    | (get dirty)   | よごす<br><i>yogosu</i>    | (make dirty)        |
| 現(表)れる<br><i>arawareru</i> | (appear)      | 現(表)す<br><i>arawasu</i> | (represent)         |
| こわれる<br><i>kowareru</i>    | (break)       | こわす<br><i>kowasu</i>    | (break)             |

G 1.  $-aru \rightarrow -eru$ 

|                        |              |                        |          |
|------------------------|--------------|------------------------|----------|
| 上がる<br><i>agaru</i>    | (rise)       | 上げる<br><i>ageru</i>    | (raise)  |
| 決まる<br><i>kimaru</i>   | (be decided) | 決める<br><i>kimeru</i>   | (decide) |
| 閉まる<br><i>shimaru</i>  | (close)      | 閉める<br><i>shimeru</i>  | (close)  |
| 集まる<br><i>atsumaru</i> | (gather)     | 集める<br><i>atsumeru</i> | (gather) |
| 始まる<br><i>hajimaru</i> | (begin)      | 始める<br><i>hajimeru</i> | (begin)  |

|                          |            |
|--------------------------|------------|
| 高まる<br><i>takamaru</i>   | (heighten) |
| 固まる<br><i>katamaru</i>   | (harden)   |
| 見つかる<br><i>mitsukaru</i> | (be found) |
| かかる<br><i>kakaru</i>     | (hang)     |
| 助かる<br><i>tasukaru</i>   | (be saved) |

|                          |            |
|--------------------------|------------|
| 高める<br><i>takameru</i>   | (heighten) |
| 固める<br><i>katameru</i>   | (harden)   |
| 見つける<br><i>mitsukeru</i> | (find)     |
| かける<br><i>kakeru</i>     | (hang)     |
| 助ける<br><i>tasukeru</i>   | (save)     |

## G 2. —waru → —eru

|                         |          |
|-------------------------|----------|
| 変(代)わる<br><i>kawaru</i> | (change) |
| 伝わる<br><i>tsutawaru</i> | (convey) |
| 加わる<br><i>kuwawaru</i>  | (join)   |

|                        |          |
|------------------------|----------|
| 変(代)える<br><i>kaeru</i> | (change) |
| 伝える<br><i>tsutaeru</i> | (convey) |
| 加える<br><i>kuwaeru</i>  | (add)    |

## H. --eru → --u

|                         |             |
|-------------------------|-------------|
| 焼ける<br><i>yakeru</i>    | (burn)      |
| 売れる<br><i>ureru</i>     | (sell)      |
| 取れる<br><i>toreru</i>    | (come off)  |
| 切れる<br><i>kireru</i>    | (cut)       |
| 破れる<br><i>yabureru</i>  | (tear)      |
| 折れる<br><i>or eru</i>    | (break)     |
| 割れる<br><i>wareru</i>    | (break)     |
| 抜ける<br><i>nukeru</i>    | (come out)  |
| ほどける<br><i>hodokeru</i> | (be untied) |
| 脱げる<br><i>nug eru</i>   | (come off)  |

|                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| 焼く<br><i>yaku</i>    | (burn)     |
| 売る<br><i>uru</i>     | (sell)     |
| 取る<br><i>toru</i>    | (take)     |
| 切る<br><i>kiru</i>    | (cut)      |
| 破る<br><i>yaburu</i>  | (tear)     |
| 折る<br><i>oru</i>     | (break)    |
| 割る<br><i>waru</i>    | (break)    |
| 抜く<br><i>nuku</i>    | (pull out) |
| ほどく<br><i>hodoku</i> | (untie)    |
| 脱ぐ<br><i>nugu</i>    | (take off) |

| I. Others               |                   |                                  |              |
|-------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|--------------|
| 見える<br><i>mieru</i>     | (be visible)      | 見る<br><i>miru</i>                | (see)        |
| 聞こえる<br><i>kikoeru</i>  | (be audible)      | 聞く<br><i>kiku</i>                | (hear)       |
| 消える<br><i>kieru</i>     | (be extinguished) | 消す<br><i>kesu</i>                | (extinguish) |
| 入る<br><i>hairu</i>      | (enter)           | 入れる<br><i>ireru</i>              | (put in)     |
| 分かれる<br><i>wakareru</i> | (get separated)   | 分ける<br><i>wakeru</i>             | (separate)   |
| 終わる<br><i>owaru</i>     | (end)             | 終える / 終わる<br><i>oeru / owaru</i> | (end)        |

### Notes

- (1) The “—u → —asu” pattern is not included in this list because this pattern applies to all intransitive Gr. 1 verbs, changing them into the causative form (i.e., the transitive form).
- (2) *Suru* ‘do’ vs. *naru* ‘become’ and *korosu* ‘kill’ vs. *shinu* ‘die’ make pairs of transitive and intransitive verbs, though the two in each pair have no phonological element in common.

## Appendix 4 Connection Forms of Important Expressions

### A. Vneg + \_\_\_\_\_ (Gr. 2: Vstem + \_\_\_\_\_)

- ～ないで (without doing ~)  
 ~ *nai de*
- ～{なければ / なくては / ねば}ならない  
 ~ {nakereba / naku te wa / neba} *naranai*
- ～{なくては / なければ / ないと}いけない (must do ~ (Obligation))  
 ~ {nakute wa / nakereba / naito} *ikenai*
- ～なくともいい (do not have to do ~)  
 ~ *nakutemo ii*
- ～なくなる (do not do ~ anymore)  
 ~ *naku naru*
- ～ずに (without doing ~)  
 ~ *zu ni*

### B. Vmasu + \_\_\_\_\_

- ～出す (begin to do ~)  
 ~ *dasu*
- ～始める (begin to do ~)  
 ~ *hajimeru*
- ～方 (how to do ~; way of doing ~)  
 ~ *kata*
- ～ましょう (Let's do ~; I (We) will do ~)  
 ~ *mashō*
- ～ながら (while doing ~)  
 ~ *nagara*
- ～なさい (Do ~ (Polite imperative))  
 ~ *nasai*
- ～に(行く) ((go) to do ~)  
 ~ *ni (iku)*
- ～にくい (hard to do ~)  
 ~ *nikui*
- お～になる (do ~ (Honorific))  
 o ~ *ni naru*
- お～する (do ~ (Humble))  
 o ~ *suru*
- ～終わる (finish doing ~)  
 ~ *owaru*

|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| ~そうだ            | (It looks like ~ will do ~) |
| ~ <i>sōda</i>   |                             |
| ~すぎる            | (do ~ excessively)          |
| ~ <i>sugiru</i> |                             |
| ~たい             | (want to do ~)              |
| ~ <i>tai</i>    |                             |
| ~やすい            | (easy to do ~)              |
| ~ <i>yasui</i>  |                             |

## C. Vinf+ \_\_\_\_\_

|                                  |                                                               |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| ~間に(に)†                          | (while)                                                       |
| ~ <i>aida</i> ( <i>ni</i> )      |                                                               |
| ~だけ                              | (just)                                                        |
| ~ <i>dake</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~だろう                             | (probably)                                                    |
| ~ <i>darō</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~はず                              | (It is expected that ~)                                       |
| ~ <i>hazu</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~ほうがいい                           | (had better do ~; I suggest ~ do ~)                           |
| ~ <i>hō ga ii</i>                |                                                               |
| ~かもしれない                          | (might)                                                       |
| ~ <i>kamoshirenai</i>            |                                                               |
| ~かしら / かなあ                       | (~, I wonder)                                                 |
| ~ <i>kashira</i> / ~ <i>kanā</i> |                                                               |
| ~けれども‡                           | (although)                                                    |
| ~ <i>keredomo</i>                |                                                               |
| ~ことは‡                            | (indeed ~ (but))                                              |
| ~ <i>koto wa</i>                 |                                                               |
| ~みたいた                            | (It appears that ~)                                           |
| ~ <i>mitaida</i>                 |                                                               |
| ~(の)なら†                          | (if)                                                          |
| ~ (no) <i>nara</i>               |                                                               |
| ~にちがいない                          | (must (Certainty))                                            |
| ~ <i>ni chigainai</i>            |                                                               |
| ~{の / ん}だ                        | (It is that ~; The fact is that ~; The explanation is that ~) |
| ~{no / n} <i>da</i>              |                                                               |
| ~ので‡                             | (since; because)                                              |
| ~ <i>node</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~のに†                             | (in spite of the fact that ~)                                 |
| ~ <i>noni</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~のは~だ                            | (It is ~ that ~)                                              |
| ~ <i>no wa ~ da</i>              |                                                               |

|                  |                                              |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| ~らしい             | (It seems that ~)                            |
| ~ <i>rashii</i>  |                                              |
| ~ し‡             | (~ and)                                      |
| ~ <i>shi</i>     |                                              |
| ~ そうだ            | (I heard that ~)                             |
| ~ <i>sōda</i>    |                                              |
| ~ 時†             | (when)                                       |
| ~ <i>toki</i>    |                                              |
| ~ わけだ            | (No wonder ~; It means that ~; That's why ~) |
| ~ <i>wake da</i> |                                              |
| ~ ようだ            | (It appears that ~)                          |
| ~ <i>yōda</i>    |                                              |
| ~ ように†           | (in such a way that ~; as ~ do ~)            |
| ~ <i>yōni</i>    |                                              |

† The formal form can also be used in very polite speech.

‡ The formal form can also be used in rather polite speech.

#### D. Vinf · nonpast + \_\_\_\_\_

|                            |                                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| ~がある                       | (There are times when)                     |
| ~ <i>koto ga aru</i>       |                                            |
| ~ ことができる                   | (can do ~)                                 |
| ~ <i>koto ga dekiru</i>    |                                            |
| ~ ことになる                    | (It's been decided that ~)                 |
| ~ <i>koto ni naru</i>      |                                            |
| ~ ことになっている                 | (It is a rule that ~; be supposed to do ~) |
| ~ <i>koto ni natte iru</i> |                                            |
| ~ ことにする                    | (decide that ~)                            |
| ~ <i>koto ni suru</i>      |                                            |
| ~ ことにしている                  | (make it a rule to do ~)                   |
| ~ <i>koto ni shite iru</i> |                                            |
| ~まで†                       | (till)                                     |
| ~ <i>made</i>              |                                            |
| ~までに†                      | (by the time when)                         |
| ~ <i>made ni</i>           |                                            |
| ~前に†                       | (before)                                   |
| ~ <i>mae ni</i>            |                                            |
| ~ものだ                       | (should do ~)                              |
| ~ <i>mono da</i>           |                                            |
| ~な                         | (Don't do ~)                               |
| ~ <i>na</i>                |                                            |
| ~のに†                       | (in order to do ~)                         |
| ~ <i>no ni</i>             |                                            |

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| ～ため                 | (in order to do ~; because) |
| ～ <i>tame</i>       |                             |
| ～と†                 | (if; when)                  |
| ～ <i>to</i>         |                             |
| ～ところだ               | (be about to do ~)          |
| ～ <i>tokoro da</i>  |                             |
| ～つもりだ               | (intend to do ~)            |
| ～ <i>tsumori da</i> |                             |
| ～うちに†               | (while)                     |
| ～ <i>uchi ni</i>    |                             |
| ～ようになる              | (come to do ~)              |
| ～ <i>yōni naru</i>  |                             |
| ～ようにする              | (try to do ~)               |
| ～ <i>yōni suru</i>  |                             |

† The formal, nonpast form can also be used in very polite speech.

#### E. Vinf · past + \_\_\_\_\_

|                       |                                           |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| ～あとで                  | (after)                                   |
| ～ <i>ato de</i>       |                                           |
| ～ことがある                | (have done ~ (Experience))                |
| ～ <i>koto ga aru</i>  |                                           |
| ～ものだ                  | (used to do ~)                            |
| ～ <i>mono da</i>      |                                           |
| ～ら‡                   | (if; when)                                |
| ～ <i>ra</i>           |                                           |
| ～らどうですか               | (Why don't you do ~?; How about doing ~?) |
| ～ <i>ra dōdesu ka</i> |                                           |
| ～り～りする                | (do things like doing ~ and doing ~)      |
| ～ <i>ri ~ ri suru</i> |                                           |
| ～ため‡                  | (because)                                 |
| ～ <i>tame</i>         |                                           |
| ～って                   | (even if)                                 |
| ～ <i>tte</i>          |                                           |
| ～ところだ                 | (have just done ~; just did ~)            |
| ～ <i>tokoro da</i>    |                                           |
| ～つもりだ                 | (mean; believe)                           |
| ～ <i>tsumori da</i>   |                                           |

‡ The formal, past form can also be used in rather polite speech.

## F. Vte + \_\_\_\_\_

|                    |                                         |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| ~あげる               | (do ~ for s.o.)                         |
| ~ <i>ageru</i>     |                                         |
| ~ある                | (have been done)                        |
| ~ <i>aru</i>       |                                         |
| ~ほしい               | (want s.o. to do ~)                     |
| ~ <i>hoshii</i>    |                                         |
| ~いく                | (do ~ and go; keep doing ~ from now on) |
| ~ <i>iku</i>       |                                         |
| ~いる                | (be doing ~; have done ~)               |
| ~ <i>iru</i>       |                                         |
| ~から                | (after)                                 |
| ~ <i>kara</i>      |                                         |
| ~ください              | (Please do ~)                           |
| ~ <i>kudasai</i>   |                                         |
| ~くれる               | (s.o. does ~ for me)                    |
| ~ <i>kureru</i>    |                                         |
| ~くる                | (do ~ and come; come to do ~)           |
| ~ <i>kuru</i>      |                                         |
| ~みる                | (do ~ and see; try to do ~)             |
| ~ <i>miru</i>      |                                         |
| ~も                 | (even if; even though)                  |
| ~ <i>mo</i>        |                                         |
| ~もいい               | (may (Permission))                      |
| ~ <i>mo ii</i>     |                                         |
| ~もらう               | (have s.o. do ~ for me)                 |
| ~ <i>morau</i>     |                                         |
| ~おく                | (do ~ in advance)                       |
| ~ <i>oku</i>       |                                         |
| ~しまう               | (have done ~; finish ~)                 |
| ~ <i>shimau</i>    |                                         |
| ~はいけない             | (must not do ~)                         |
| ~ <i>wa ikenai</i> |                                         |

## G. Vcond + \_\_\_\_\_ (Gr. 2: Vstem+re+\_\_\_\_\_)

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| ~ばよかった              | (I wish ~ had done ~) |
| ~ <i>ba yokatta</i> |                       |

## H. Vvol + \_\_\_\_\_

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| ~ようと思う              | (~ think ~ will do ~) |
| ~ <i>yō to omou</i> |                       |
| ~ようと/or する          | (try to do ~)         |
| ~ <i>yō to suru</i> |                       |

I. Adj(*i*)inf + \_\_\_\_\_

|                                  |                                                               |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| ~間に(に)                           | (while)                                                       |
| ~ <i>aida</i> (ni)               |                                                               |
| ~だけ                              | (just)                                                        |
| ~ <i>dake</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~だろう                             | (probably)                                                    |
| ~ <i>darō</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~はず                              | (It is expected that ~)                                       |
| ~ <i>hazu</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~かもしれない                          | (might)                                                       |
| ~ <i>kamo shirenai</i>           |                                                               |
| ~かしら / ~かなあ                      | (~, I wonder)                                                 |
| ~ <i>kashira</i> / ~ <i>kanā</i> |                                                               |
| ~けれども                            | (although)                                                    |
| ~ <i>keredomo</i>                |                                                               |
| ~ことは~                            | (indeed (but))                                                |
| ~ <i>koto wa</i> ~               |                                                               |
| ~(の)なら                           | (if)                                                          |
| ~ (no) <i>nara</i>               |                                                               |
| ~にちがいない                          | (must (Certainty))                                            |
| ~ <i>ni chigainai</i>            |                                                               |
| ~{の / んだ}                        | (It is that ~; The fact is that ~; The explanation is that ~) |
| ~{no / n}da                      |                                                               |
| ~ので†                             | (since; because)                                              |
| ~ <i>node</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~のに†                             | (in spite of the fact that ~)                                 |
| ~ <i>noni</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~のは~だ                            | (It is ~ that ~)                                              |
| ~ <i>no wa</i> ~ da              |                                                               |
| ~らしい                             | (It seems that ~)                                             |
| ~ <i>rashii</i>                  |                                                               |
| ~し†                              | (and)                                                         |
| ~ <i>shi</i>                     |                                                               |
| ~そうだ                             | (I heard that ~)                                              |
| ~ <i>sōda</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~ため                              | (because)                                                     |
| ~ <i>tame</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~時                               | (when)                                                        |
| ~ <i>toki</i>                    |                                                               |
| ~つもり                             | (believe)                                                     |
| ~ <i>tsumori</i>                 |                                                               |

|           |                             |
|-----------|-----------------------------|
| ~わけだ      | (No wonder ~; That's why ~) |
| ~ wake da |                             |
| ~ ようだ     | (It appears that ~)         |
| ~ yōda    |                             |

† The formal form can also be used in very polite speech.

‡ The formal form can also be used in rather polite speech.

#### J. Adj(i)inf · nonpast + \_\_\_\_\_

|               |                        |
|---------------|------------------------|
| ~ことがある        | (There are times when) |
| ~ koto ga aru |                        |
| ~と            | (when, if)             |
| ~ to          |                        |
| ~うちに          | (while)                |
| ~ uchi ni     |                        |

#### K. Adj(i)inf · past + \_\_\_\_\_

|                |                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| ~ことがある         | (There were times when)            |
| ~ koto ga aru  |                                    |
| ~ら             | (if; when)                         |
| ~ ra           |                                    |
| ~り～りする         | (~ is sometimes ~ and sometimes ~) |
| ~ ri ~ ri suru |                                    |
| ~って            | (even if)                          |
| ~ tte          |                                    |

#### L. Adj(i)te + \_\_\_\_\_

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| ~も          | (even if; even though) |
| ~ mo        |                        |
| ~もいい        | (It is all right if ~) |
| ~ mo ii     |                        |
| ~たまらない      | (unbearably)           |
| ~ tamaranai |                        |

#### M. Adj(i)stem + \_\_\_\_\_

|        |                       |
|--------|-----------------------|
| ~がる    | (show the sign of)    |
| ~ garu |                       |
| ~み     | [Noun form of Adj(i)] |
| ~ mi   |                       |

|                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| ~さ              | [Noun form of Adj(i)] |
| ~ <i>sa</i>     |                       |
| ~そくだ            | (look)                |
| ~ <i>sōda</i>   |                       |
| ~すぎる            | (excessively)         |
| ~ <i>sugiru</i> |                       |

N. Adj(*na*)stem + {*na*  
  {*datta*} + \_\_\_\_\_

|                              |                                                    |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| ~間に(に)                       | (while)                                            |
| ~ <i>aida</i> (ni)           |                                                    |
| ~だけ                          | (only)                                             |
| ~ <i>dake</i>                |                                                    |
| ~はず                          | (It is expected that ~)                            |
| ~ <i>hazu</i>                |                                                    |
| ~ことは~                        | (indeed ~ (but))                                   |
| ~ <i>koto wa</i> ~           |                                                    |
| ~{の / ん}だ                    | (It is that ~; The fact is that ~; The explanation |
| ~ { <i>no</i> / <i>n</i> }da | is that ~)                                         |
| ~ので                          | (since; because)                                   |
| ~ <i>node</i>                |                                                    |
| ~のに                          | (in spite of the fact that ~)                      |
| ~ <i>noni</i>                |                                                    |
| ~のは~だ                        | (It is ~ that ~)                                   |
| ~ <i>no wa</i> ~ <i>da</i>   |                                                    |
| ~ため                          | (because)                                          |
| ~ <i>tame</i>                |                                                    |
| ~時                           | (when)                                             |
| ~ <i>toki</i>                |                                                    |
| ~つもり                         | (mean; believe)                                    |
| ~ <i>tsumori</i>             |                                                    |
| ~わけだ                         | (No wonder ~; That's why ~)                        |
| ~ <i>wake da</i>             |                                                    |
| ~ようだ                         | (It appears that ~)                                |
| ~ <i>yōda</i>                |                                                    |

O. {Adj(*na*)stem}  
  {*N*} + {*da*  
  {*datta*} + \_\_\_\_\_

|                   |            |
|-------------------|------------|
| ~けれども†            | (although) |
| ~ <i>keredomo</i> |            |
| ~し†               | (and)      |
| ~ <i>shi</i>      |            |

~そうだ  
~ sōda  
(I heard that ~)

† The formal form of *da* / *datta* (i.e., *desu* / *deshita*) can also be used in rather polite speech.

P. {Adj(*na*)stem}<sub>N</sub> + { $\emptyset$ } + {*datta*} + \_\_\_\_\_

- ~だろう (probably)  
~ *darō*
- ~かもしれない (might)  
~ *kamoshirenai*
- ~かしら / ~かなあ (~, I wonder)  
~ *kashira* / ~ *kanā*
- ~なら (if)  
~ *nara*
- ~にちがいない (must (Certainty))  
~ *ni chigainai*
- ~らしい (It seems ~)  
~ *rashii*

Q. {Adj(*na*)stem}<sub>N</sub> + *da* + \_\_\_\_\_

- ~と† (when; if)  
~ *to*

† The formal form of *da* (i.e., *desu*) can also be used in very polite speech.

R. Adj(*na*)stem + *na* + \_\_\_\_\_

- ~ことがある (There are times when ~)  
~ *koto ga aru*
- ~うちに (while)  
~ *uchi ni*

S. {Adj(*na*)stem}<sub>N</sub> + *datta* + \_\_\_\_\_

- ~ことがある (There were times when ~)  
~ *koto ga aru*
- ~ら† (if; when)  
~ *ra*
- ~り～りする (~ is sometimes ~ and sometimes ~)  
~ *ri ~ ri suru*

|       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| ～って   | (even if) |
| ～ tte |           |

‡ The formal form of *datta* (i.e., *deshita*) can also be used in rather polite speech.

|    |                             |                     |
|----|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| T. | {Adj( <i>na</i> )stem}<br>N | + <i>de</i> + _____ |
|----|-----------------------------|---------------------|

|                |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|
| ～も             | (even if; even though) |
| ～ <i>mo</i>    |                        |
| ～もいい           | (It is all right if ~) |
| ～ <i>mo ii</i> |                        |

|    |                              |
|----|------------------------------|
| U. | Adj( <i>na</i> )stem + _____ |
|----|------------------------------|

|                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| ～さ              | [Noun form of Adj( <i>na</i> )] |
| ～ <i>sa</i>     |                                 |
| ～そうだ            | (look)                          |
| ～ <i>sōda</i>   |                                 |
| ～すぎる            | (excessively)                   |
| ～ <i>sugiru</i> |                                 |

|    |                                           |
|----|-------------------------------------------|
| V. | N + { <i>no</i><br><i>datta</i> } + _____ |
|----|-------------------------------------------|

|                    |                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| ～間に                | (during; while)            |
| ～ <i>aida</i> (ni) |                            |
| ～はず                | (It is expected that ~)    |
| ～ <i>hazu</i>      |                            |
| ～ため                | (for; because of; because) |
| ～ <i>tame</i>      |                            |
| ～時                 | (at the time of; when)     |
| ～ <i>toki</i>      |                            |
| ～つもり               | (mean; believe)            |
| ～ <i>tsumori</i>   |                            |
| ～ようだ               | (It appears that ~; look)  |
| ～ <i>yōda</i>      |                            |

|    |                                           |
|----|-------------------------------------------|
| W. | N + { <i>na</i><br><i>datta</i> } + _____ |
|----|-------------------------------------------|

|                              |                                                               |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| ～{の / ん}だ                    | (It is that ~; The fact is that ~; The explanation is that ~) |
| ～ { <i>no</i> / <i>n</i> }da |                                                               |
| ～ので                          | (since; because)                                              |
| ～ <i>node</i>                |                                                               |

|                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ～のに                        | (in spite of the fact that ~) |
| ～ <i>noni</i>              |                               |
| ～のは～だ                      | (It is ~ that ~)              |
| ～ <i>no wa</i> ～ <i>da</i> |                               |

X. N+*no*+ \_\_\_\_\_

|                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| ～うちに             | (while) |
| ～ <i>uchi ni</i> |         |

Appendix 5 *Ko-so-a-do*

| Non-Modifier                                 |                                       |                                     |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| What is being talked about is                | Demonstrative Pronoun                 | Location                            | Direction                                    |
|                                              |                                       |                                     | nonpolite                                    |
| close to the speaker                         | これ<br><i>kore</i><br>(this)           | ここ<br><i>koko</i><br>(here)         | こっち<br><i>kotchi</i><br>(this way)           |
| close to the hearer                          | それ<br><i>sore</i><br>(that)           | そこ<br><i>soko</i><br>(there)        | そっち<br><i>sotchi</i><br>(that way)           |
| removed from both the speaker and the hearer | あれ<br><i>are</i><br>(that over there) | あそこ<br><i>asoko</i><br>(over there) | あっち<br><i>atchi</i><br>(that way over there) |
| being questioned                             | どれ<br><i>dore</i><br>(Which?)         | どこ<br><i>doko</i><br>(Where?)       | どっち<br><i>dotchi</i><br>(Which way?)         |

## Notes

1. *Ko-so-a-do* of direction can be used to refer to persons as well as things, places and directions, as in:
  - (1) a. こちらは山田さんです。  
**Kochira wa Yamada-san desu.**  
 (This is Mr. Yamada.)
  - b. こっちの方が安いよ。  
**Kotchi no hō ga yasui yo.**  
 (This one is cheaper, you know.)
  - c. お手洗いはこちらです。  
**O-tearai wa kochira desu.**  
 (The toilet is this way.)
  - d. こっちが僕の車だ。  
**Kotchi ga boku no kuruma da.**  
 (This one is my car.)

| Modifier                                      |                                         |                                        |                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| polite                                        | Demonstrative Adjective                 | Kinds                                  | Manner                         |
| こちら<br><i>kochira</i><br>(this way)           | この<br><i>kono</i><br>(this ~)           | こんな<br><i>konna</i><br>(this kind of)  | こう<br><i>kō</i><br>(like this) |
| そちら<br><i>sochira</i><br>(that way)           | その<br><i>sono</i><br>(that ~)           | そんな<br><i>sonna</i><br>(that kind of)  | そう<br><i>sō</i><br>(like that) |
| あちら<br><i>achira</i><br>(that way over there) | あの<br><i>ano</i><br>(that ~ over there) | あんな<br><i>anna</i><br>(that kind of)   | ああ<br><i>ā</i><br>(like that)  |
| どちら<br><i>dochira</i><br>(Which way?)         | どの<br><i>dono</i><br>(Which ~?)         | どんな<br><i>donna</i><br>(What kind of?) | どう<br><i>dō</i><br>(How?)      |

2. The *so*-series can be used to direct attention to a referent removed from both the speaker and the hearer if information about the referent has been given to the hearer, as in:

(2) A : きのう車で湖に行って來たよ。

*Kinō kuruma de mizuumi ni itte kita yo.*  
(Yesterday I went to a lake by car.)

B : その湖には魚がいたかい?

*Sono mizuumi ni wa sakana ga ita kai?*  
(Were there fish in the lake?)

3. The speaker feels most empathetic with an item referred to by the *ko*-series, because the item is closest to him. On the other hand, the speaker feels least empathetic with an item referred to by the *a*-series, because the item is removed from him and his hearer.

## Appendix 6 Numerals and Counters

## A. Numerals

|    | Native<br>Japanese<br>Numerals | Sino-Japanese |                           |    |                                   |     |                                   |
|----|--------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|----|-----------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|
| 1  | 一 (つ)<br><i>hito(-tsu)</i>     | 1             | 一<br><i>ichi</i>          | 11 | 十一<br><i>jū-ichi</i>              | 21  | 二十一<br><i>ni-jū-ichi</i>          |
| 2  | 二 (つ)<br><i>futa(-tsu)</i>     | 2             | 二<br><i>ni</i>            | 12 | 十二<br><i>jū-ni</i>                | 22  | 二十二<br><i>ni-jū-ni</i>            |
| 3  | 三 (つ)<br><i>mit(-tsu)</i>      | 3             | 三<br><i>san</i>           | 13 | 十三<br><i>jū-san</i>               | 30  | 三十<br><i>san-jū</i>               |
| 4  | 四 (つ)<br><i>yot(-tsu)</i>      | 4             | 四<br><i>{yon<br/>shi}</i> | 14 | 十四<br><i>jū-{yon<br/>shi}</i>     | 40  | 四十<br><i>yon<br/>shi}-{jū</i>     |
| 5  | 五 (つ)<br><i>itsu(-tsu)</i>     | 5             | 五<br><i>go</i>            | 15 | 十五<br><i>jū-go</i>                | 50  | 五十<br><i>go-jū</i>                |
| 6  | 六 (つ)<br><i>mut(-tsu)</i>      | 6             | 六<br><i>roku</i>          | 16 | 十六<br><i>jū-roku</i>              | 60  | 六十<br><i>roku-jū</i>              |
| 7  | 七 (つ)<br><i>nana(-tsu)</i>     | 7             | 七<br><i>shichi</i>        | 17 | 十七<br><i>jū-{shichi<br/>nana}</i> | 70  | 七十<br><i>shichi<br/>nana}-{jū</i> |
| 8  | 八 (つ)<br><i>yat(-tsu)</i>      | 8             | 八<br><i>hachi</i>         | 18 | 十八<br><i>jū-hachi</i>             | 80  | 八十<br><i>hachi-jū</i>             |
| 9  | 九 (つ)<br><i>kokono(-tsu)</i>   | 9             | 九<br><i>{kyū<br/>ku}</i>  | 19 | 十九<br><i>jū-{kyū<br/>ku}</i>      | 90  | 九十<br><i>kyū-jū</i>               |
| 10 | 十<br><i>tō</i>                 | 10            | 十<br><i>jū</i>            | 20 | 二十<br><i>ni-jū</i>                | 100 | 百<br><i>hyaku</i>                 |

## Notes

1. The native Japanese numeral system is used from 1 to 10 only. For numbers greater than 10 the Sino-Japanese numeral system is used. The parenthesized *-tsu* is a counter for things.
2. 1,000 is usually read as *sen*, not as *is-sen*.
3. Telephone numbers are given in Sino-Japanese numerals. For example,

### Numerals

|       |                                 |        |                                              |                   |                              |
|-------|---------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 126   | 百二十六<br><i>hyaku-ni-jū-roku</i> | 1,352  | 千三百五十二<br><i>sen-san-byaku-go-jū-ni</i>      | 100,000           | 十 万<br><i>jū-man</i>         |
| 200   | 二 百<br><i>ni-hyaku</i>          | 2,000  | 二 千<br><i>ni-sen</i>                         | 1,000,000         | 百 万<br><i>hyaku-man</i>      |
| 300   | 三 百<br><i>san-byaku</i>         | 3,000  | 三 千<br><i>san-sen</i>                        | 10,000,000        | 一千万<br><i>is-sen-man</i>     |
| 400   | 四 百<br><i>yon-hyaku</i>         | 4,000  | 四 千<br><i>yon-sen</i>                        | 100,000,000       | 一 億<br><i>ichi-oku</i>       |
| 500   | 五 百<br><i>go-hyaku</i>          | 5,000  | 五 千<br><i>go-sen</i>                         | 1,000,000,000     | 十 億<br><i>jū-oku</i>         |
| 600   | 六 百<br><i>rop-pyaku</i>         | 6,000  | 六 千<br><i>roku-sen</i>                       | 10,000,000,000    | 百 億<br><i>hyaku-oku</i>      |
| 700   | 七 百<br><i>nana-hyaku</i>        | 7,000  | 七 千<br><i>shichi } -sen</i><br><i>nana }</i> | 100,000,000,000   | (一)千億<br><i>(is-)sen-oku</i> |
| 800   | 八 百<br><i>hap-pyaku</i>         | 8,000  | 八 千<br><i>has-sen</i>                        | 1,000,000,000,000 | 一 兆<br><i>it-chō</i>         |
| 900   | 九 百<br><i>kyū-hyaku</i>         | 9,000  | 九 千<br><i>kyū-sen</i>                        |                   |                              |
| 1,000 | 千<br><i>sen</i>                 | 10,000 | 一 万<br><i>ichi-man</i>                       |                   |                              |

389-2681 is read as “*san-hachi-kyū-no, ni-roku-hachi-ichi*”. However, 4 and 7 are often read as *yon* and *nana*, respectively.

4. The year according to the Western calendar is given in Sino-Japanese numerals followed by *nen*, the counter for year. Thus, 1984 is read as “*sen-kyūhyaku-hachijū-yo(n)nen*”.

## B. Counters (The following chart lists some commonly-used counters.)

|    | Type A                                                                   | Type B                                                                    | Type C                                   | Type D                                      | Type E                                     |
|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
|    | 枚<br>-mai<br>(thin<br>object:<br><i>paper,</i><br><i>ticket</i><br>etc.) | 本<br>-hon<br>(long<br>object:<br><i>pencil,</i><br><i>stick,</i><br>etc.) | 課<br>-ka<br>(lesson)                     | 冊<br>-satsu<br>(volume)                     | 頁<br>-pēji<br>(page)                       |
| 1  | 一枚<br><i>ichi-mai</i>                                                    | 一本<br><i>ip-pon</i>                                                       | 一課<br><i>ik-ka</i>                       | 一冊<br><i>is-satsu</i>                       | 一頁<br><i>ip</i><br><i>ichi</i> } -pēji     |
| 2  | 二枚<br><i>ni-mai</i>                                                      | 二本<br><i>ni-hon</i>                                                       | 二課<br><i>ni-ka</i>                       | 二冊<br><i>ni-satsu</i>                       | 二頁<br><i>ni-pēji</i>                       |
| 3  | 三枚<br><i>san-mai</i>                                                     | 三本<br><i>san-bon</i>                                                      | 三課<br><i>san-ka</i>                      | 三冊<br><i>san-satsu</i>                      | 三頁<br><i>san-pēji</i>                      |
| 4  | 四枚<br><i>yo(n)-mai</i>                                                   | 四本<br><i>yon-hon</i>                                                      | 四課<br><i>yon-ka</i>                      | 四冊<br><i>yon-satsu</i>                      | 四頁<br><i>yon-pēji</i>                      |
| 5  | 五枚<br><i>go-mai</i>                                                      | 五本<br><i>go-hon</i>                                                       | 五課<br><i>go-ka</i>                       | 五冊<br><i>go-satsu</i>                       | 五頁<br><i>go-pēji</i>                       |
| 6  | 六枚<br><i>roku-mai</i>                                                    | 六本<br><i>rop-pon</i>                                                      | 六課<br><i>rok-ka</i>                      | 六冊<br><i>roku-satsu</i>                     | 六頁<br><i>roku</i><br><i>rop</i> } -pēji    |
| 7  | 七枚<br><i>nana</i><br><i>shichi</i> } -mai                                | 七本<br><i>nana</i><br><i>shichi</i> } -hon                                 | 七課<br><i>nana</i><br><i>shichi</i> } -ka | 七冊<br><i>nana</i><br><i>shichi</i> } -satsu | 七頁<br><i>nana</i><br><i>shichi</i> } -pēji |
| 8  | 八枚<br><i>hachi-mai</i>                                                   | 八本<br><i>hachi-hon</i><br><i>hap-pon</i>                                  | 八課<br><i>hachi</i><br><i>hak</i> } -ka   | 八冊<br><i>has-satsu</i>                      | 八頁<br><i>hachi</i><br><i>hap</i> } -pēji   |
| 9  | 九枚<br><i>kyū-mai</i>                                                     | 九本<br><i>kyū-hon</i>                                                      | 九課<br><i>kyū-ka</i>                      | 九冊<br><i>kyū-satsu</i>                      | 九頁<br><i>kyū-pēji</i>                      |
| 10 | 十枚<br><i>jū-mai</i>                                                      | 十本<br><i>jup-pon</i>                                                      | 十課<br><i>juk-ka</i>                      | 十冊<br><i>jus-satsu</i>                      | 十頁<br><i>jup-pēji</i>                      |

| Type F                                         | Irregular Types                                  |                                |                                             |                        |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 頭<br>-tō<br>(head of cattle)                   | 人<br>-nin<br>(people)                            | 日<br>-ka<br>(day of the month) | 日<br>-nichi<br>(day)                        | 晚<br>-ban<br>(night)   |
| 一頭<br><i>it-tō</i>                             | 一人<br><i>hitori</i>                              | 一日<br><i>tsuitachi</i>         | 一日<br><i>ichi-nichi</i>                     | 一晚<br><i>hito-ban</i>  |
| 二頭<br><i>ni-tō</i>                             | 二人<br><i>futari</i>                              | 二日<br><i>futsu-ka</i>          | 二日<br><i>futsu-ka</i>                       | 二晚<br><i>futa-ban</i>  |
| 三頭<br><i>san-tō</i>                            | 三人<br><i>san-nin</i>                             | 三日<br><i>mik-ka</i>            | 三日<br><i>mik-ka</i>                         | 三晚<br><i>mi-ban</i>    |
| 四頭<br><i>yon-tō</i>                            | 四人<br><i>yo-nin</i>                              | 四日<br><i>yok-ka</i>            | 四日<br><i>yok-ka</i>                         | 四晚<br><i>yo-ban</i>    |
| 五頭<br><i>go-tō</i>                             | 五人<br><i>go-nin</i>                              | 五日<br><i>itsu-ka</i>           | 五日<br><i>itsu-ka</i><br><i>go-nichi</i>     | 五晚<br><i>go-ban</i>    |
| 六頭<br><i>roku-tō</i>                           | 六人<br><i>roku-nin</i>                            | 六日<br><i>mui-ka</i>            | 六日<br><i>mui-ka</i><br><i>roku-nichi</i>    | 六晚<br><i>roku-ban</i>  |
| 七頭<br><i>nana } -tō</i><br><i>shichi } -tō</i> | 七人<br><i>nana } -nin</i><br><i>shichi } -nin</i> | 七日<br><i>nano-ka</i>           | 七日<br><i>nano-ka</i><br><i>shichi-nichi</i> | 七晚<br><i>nana-ban</i>  |
| 八頭<br><i>hat-tō</i>                            | 八人<br><i>hachi-nin</i>                           | 八日<br><i>yō-ka</i>             | 八日<br><i>yō-ka</i><br><i>hachi-nichi</i>    | 八晚<br><i>hachi-ban</i> |
| 九頭<br><i>kyū-tō</i>                            | 九人<br><i>kyū } -nin</i><br><i>ku } -nin</i>      | 九日<br><i>kokono-ka</i>         | 九日<br><i>kokono-ka</i><br><i>ku-nichi</i>   | 九晚<br><i>kyū-ban</i>   |
| 十頭<br><i>jū-tō</i>                             | 十人<br><i>jū-nin</i>                              | 十日<br><i>tō-ka</i>             | 十日<br><i>tō-ka</i>                          | 十晚<br><i>jū-ban</i>    |

## Notes

- Depending on the initial sound of a counter, the pronunciation of the number and / or the counter changes. Counters are classified according to the phonetic modifications they undergo. Type A counters are straightforward cases of *Sino-Japanese Number+Counter*, with no phonetic modifications. The following is a chart of phonetic modifications for Type B through Type F. If there is no entry for a given number it indicates that there is no phonetic modification for that particular number. As for the remaining irregular types, you have to memorize them piecemeal.

| Counters<br>Numbers \ | Type B<br><i>h-</i> | Type C<br><i>k-</i> | Type D<br><i>s-</i> | Type E<br><i>p-</i> | Type F<br><i>t-</i> |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1                     | [ <i>ipp-</i> ]     | [ <i>ikk-</i> ]     | [ <i>iss-</i> ]     | [ <i>ipp-</i> ]     | [ <i>itt-</i> ]     |
| 3                     | [ <i>sanb-</i> ]    |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 6                     | [ <i>ropp-</i> ]    | [ <i>rokk-</i> ]    |                     | ([ <i>ropp-</i> ])  |                     |
| 8                     | ([ <i>happ-</i> ])  | ([ <i>hakk-</i> ])  | [ <i>hass-</i> ]    | ([ <i>happ-</i> ])  | [ <i>hatt-</i> ]    |
| 10                    | [ <i>jupp-</i> ]    | [ <i>jukk-</i> ]    | [ <i>juss-</i> ]    | [ <i>jupp</i> ]     | [ <i>jutt-</i> ]    |

([ ]) indicates that [ ] is optional.

- The 20th day of the month and 20 days are not *nijūnichi* but *hatsuka*. ‘Twenty years old’ is referred to as *hatachi*.
- The following is a list of other examples of each type:

*Type A*: 倍 -*bai* ‘time’ 番 -*ban* ‘ordinal number’  
 度 -*do* ‘frequency’ 叠 -*jō* ‘tatami mat’  
 部 -*bu* ‘part’ 面 -*men* ‘newspaper page’

*Type A'*: (Exactly the same as Type A except that number 4 is pronounced *yo* not *yon*.)

時 -*ji* ‘o'clock’ 時間 -*jikan* ‘hour’ 年 -*nen* ‘year’

*Type A''*: (Exactly the same as Type A except that numbers 4, 7 and 9 are pronounced *shi*, *shichi* and *ku*, respectively.)

月 -*gatsu* ‘name of the month’

*Type A'''*: (Exactly the same as Type A except that the initial sound of the counter with number 3 changes from *wa* to *ba*.)

羽 -*wa* ‘bird’

*Type B*: 杯 -*hai* ‘cup of’ 匹 -*hiki* ‘animal’

*Type B'*: (Exactly the same as Type B except that the initial sound of the counter with number 3 is not *b-* but *p-*.)

|          |                                                                                                                                |                            |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
|          | 泊 - <i>haku</i> 'stay (overnight)'                                                                                             | 分 - <i>hun</i> 'minute'    |
| Type C:  | か月 - <i>ka getsu</i> 'month'                                                                                                   | 回 - <i>kai</i> 'frequency' |
|          | 巻 - <i>kan</i> 'volume'                                                                                                        | 個 - <i>ko</i> 'piece'      |
| Type C': | (Exactly the same as Type C except that the initial sound of the counter with number 3 can be either <i>k-</i> or <i>g-</i> .) |                            |
|          | 階 - <i>kai</i> 'floor'                                                                                                         |                            |
| Type D:  | 歳 - <i>sai</i> '-year old'                                                                                                     | 隻 - <i>sō</i> 'boat'       |
| Type D': | (Exactly the same as Type D except that the initial sound of the counter with number 3 is <i>z-</i> not <i>s-</i> .)           |                            |
|          | 足 - <i>soku</i> 'footgear'                                                                                                     |                            |
| Type E:  | ポンド - <i>pondō</i> 'pound'                                                                                                     |                            |
| Type F:  | 等 - <i>tō</i> 'class, grade'                                                                                                   | トン - <i>ton</i> 'ton'      |
|          | 通 - <i>tsū</i> 'letter'                                                                                                        |                            |

## Appendix 7 Compound Words

A compound is a word that consists of two or more independent words with a meaning which cannot be predicted from the combination of the constituent elements. For example, *hana o miru* means ‘to see flowers’, but the compound version *hana-mi* means specifically ‘the viewing of cherry blossoms’.

The following is a list of basic nominal, verbal and adjectival compounds and their formation.

| Formation                          | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>(A) Nominal Compounds</b>       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| (a) Noun +<br>Vmasu (intransitive) | <p>水遊び (dabbling in water)<br/> <i>mizu-asobi</i><br/>         (Lit. water-play)</p> <p>昼寝 (siesta)<br/> <i>hiru-ne</i><br/>         (Lit. noon-sleep)</p> <p>山登り (mountain climbing)<br/> <i>yama-nobori</i><br/>         (Lit. mountain-climb)</p>                             |
| (b) Noun +<br>Vmasu (transitive)   | <p>花見 (the viewing of cherry blossoms)<br/> <i>hana-mi</i><br/>         (Lit. flower-view)</p> <p>人殺し (manslaughter)<br/> <i>hito-goroshi</i><br/>         (Lit. man-kill)</p> <p>靴みがき (shoe polishing; shoebblack)<br/> <i>kutsu-migaki</i><br/>         (Lit. shoe-polish)</p> |
| (c) Vmasu (intransitive) +<br>Noun | <p>乗り物 (vehicle)<br/> <i>nori-mono</i><br/>         (Lit. ride-thing)</p> <p>出口 (exit)<br/> <i>de-guchi</i><br/>         (Lit. leave-mouth)</p> <p>寝酒 (nightcap)<br/> <i>ne-zake</i><br/>         (Lit. sleep-sake)</p>                                                          |
| (d) Vmasu (transitive) +<br>Noun   | <p>飲み水 (drinking water)<br/> <i>nomi-mizu</i><br/>         (Lit. drink-water)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                |

|                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                 | <p>食べ物 (food)<br/> <i>tabe-mono</i><br/> (Lit. eat-thing)</p> <p>借り物 (borrowed thing)<br/> <i>kari-mono</i><br/> (Lit. borrow-thing)</p>                                                                                                                                        |
| (e) Vmasu (intransitive) + Vmasu (intransitive) | <p>上り下り (ascending and descending)<br/> <i>nobori-ori</i><br/> (Lit. go up-go down)</p> <p>出入り (going in and out)<br/> <i>de-hairi</i><br/> (Lit. leave-enter)</p> <p>行き帰り (going and coming back)<br/> <i>iki-kaeri</i><br/> (Lit. go-return)</p>                              |
| (f) Adj( <i>i</i> )stem + Noun                  | <p>古本 (secondhand book)<br/> <i>furu-hon</i><br/> (Lit. old-book)</p> <p>黒船 (black ship that came to Japan from America and Europe during the Edo period)<br/> <i>kuro-fune</i><br/> (Lit. black-boat)</p> <p>青ひげ (a blue beard)<br/> <i>ao-hige</i><br/> (Lit. blue-beard)</p> |
| (g) Adj( <i>na</i> )stem + Noun                 | <p>安全地帯 (safety zone)<br/> <i>anzen-chitai</i><br/> (Lit. safe-zone)</p> <p>健康食品 (health food)<br/> <i>kenkō-shokuhin</i><br/> (Lit. healthy-food)</p> <p>柔軟体操 (calisthenics)<br/> <i>jūnan-taisō</i><br/> (Lit. flexible-exercise)</p>                                         |
| (h) Noun + Noun                                 | <p>川魚 (freshwater fish)<br/> <i>kawa-zakana</i><br/> (Lit. river-fish)</p> <p>女子学生 (co-ed)<br/> <i>joshi-gakusei</i><br/> (Lit. female-student)</p>                                                                                                                             |

東京大学 (the University of Tokyo)  
*Tōkyō-Daigaku*  
 (Lit. Tokyo-University)

## (i) Adj(i)stem + Vmasu

早分かり (quick understanding)  
*haya-wakari*  
 (Lit. quick-understand)  
 早起き (early rising; early riser)  
*haya-oki*  
 (Lit. early-get up)  
 長話 (long talk)  
*naga-banashi*  
 (Lit. long-talk)

(B) *Verbal Compounds*

## Vmasu + Vinf · nonpast

歩きまわる (walk around)  
*aruki-mawaru*  
 (Lit. walk-go round)  
 話しかける (speak to)  
*hanashi-kakeru*  
 (Lit. talk-hang)  
 話し合う (discuss with)  
*hanashi-au*  
 (Lit. talk-fit)  
 読み続ける (continue to read)  
*yomi-tsuzukeru*  
 (Lit. read-continue)  
 食べ始める (begin to eat)  
*tabe-hajimeru*  
 (Lit. eat-begin)  
 書き終わる (finish writing)  
*kaki-owaru*  
 (Lit. write-finish)

(C) *Adjectival Compounds*

## (a) Adj(i)stem + Adj(i)

薄暗い (dim)  
*usu-gurai*  
 (Lit. thin-dark)  
 青白い (pale)  
*ao-jiroi*  
 (Lit. blue-white)  
 堅苦しい (formal)  
*kata-kurushii*  
 (Lit. hard-painful)

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (b) Noun+Adj(i) | 心強い (feel secure)<br><i>kokoro-zuyoi</i><br>(Lit. heart-strong)<br><br>气難しい (hard to please)<br><i>ki-muzukashii</i><br>(Lit. spirit-difficult)<br><br>義理堅い (grateful)<br><i>giri-gatai</i><br>(Lit. obligation-hard) |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Notes**

In compound words, the initial voiceless consonant (i.e., plosives such as *k*-, *t*-; fricatives such as *s*-, *h*-, *f*-; affricates such as *ts*-, *ch*-) of the second element of the compound tends to become voiced as shown below:

- e.g. *hito* 'man' + *koroshi* 'kill' → *hitogoroshi* 'manslaughter'  
*ami* 'net' + *to* 'door' → *amido* 'screen door'  
*ne* 'sleep' + *sake* 'rice wine' → *nezake* 'nightcap'  
*naga* 'long' + *hanashi* 'talk' → *nagabanashi* 'long talk'  
*ki* 'tree' + *fune* 'boat' → *kibune* 'wooden vessel'  
*kokoro* 'heart' + *tsuyoi* 'strong' → *kokorozuyoi* 'feel secure'  
*hana* 'nose' + *chi* 'blood' → *hanaji* 'nosebleed'

Voicing, however, does not normally take place if one of the following conditions is met.

1. The second element is a borrowed word whose 'foreignness' is still strongly felt.

- e.g. *kyōiku* 'education' + *terebi* 'television'  
→ *kyōiku* {*terebi* / *\*derebi* 'educational television'  
*kateiyō* 'home use' + *konpyūtā* 'computer'  
→ *kateiyō* {*konpyūtā* / *\*gonpyūtā* 'home computer'

But if a borrowed word is free from 'foreignness', then voicing tends to take place.

- e.g. *ame* 'rain' + *kappa* 'Portuguese *capa*' → *amagappa* 'raincoat'  
*iroha* 'Japanese alphabet' + *karuta* 'Portuguese *carta*' → *irohagaruta* 'Japanese alphabet cards'

2. The consonant of the second syllable of the second element is voiced.

- e.g. *hi* 'sun' + *kage* 'shade' → {*hikage* 'shade'  
*\*higage*  
*ushiro* 'back' + *sugata* 'appearance' → {*ushirosugata*  
*\*ushirozugata*  
'appearance from the back'

## Appendix 8 Improving Reading Skill by Identifying an ‘Extended Sentential Unit’

In Japanese, the most important principle of word order is that *the modifier precedes what is being modified.* (⇒ Characteristics of Japanese Grammar, 1. Word Order) The typical modifier modified word order in Japanese can be summarized as follows:

| MODIFIER                                    | + | MODIFIED                              | MEANING                 |
|---------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Adjective                                   | + | Noun                                  |                         |
| おもしろい<br><i>omoshiroi</i><br>(interesting)  |   | 人<br><i>hito</i><br>(person)          | ‘an interesting person’ |
| Adverb                                      | + | Adjective                             |                         |
| とても<br><i>totemo</i><br>(very)              |   | 大きい<br><i>ōkii</i><br>(big)           | ‘very big’              |
| Adverb                                      | + | Verb                                  |                         |
| 速く<br><i>hayaku</i><br>(quickly)            |   | 歩く<br><i>aruku</i><br>(walk)          | ‘walk fast’             |
| Noun                                        | + | Particle                              |                         |
| 子供<br><i>kodomo</i><br>(child)              |   | が<br><i>ga</i><br>(subject)           | ‘a child (subject)’     |
| 先生<br><i>sensei</i><br>(teacher)            |   | に<br><i>ni</i><br>(to)                | ‘to a teacher’          |
| Sentence                                    | + | Conjunction                           |                         |
| 本を買う<br><i>hon o kau</i><br>((I) buy books) |   | から<br><i>kara</i><br>(because)        | ‘because I buy books’   |
| 雨が降った<br><i>ame ga futta</i><br>(it rained) |   | けれども<br><i>keredomo</i><br>(although) | ‘although it rained’    |

| Sentence                                                          | + | Nominalizer                               |                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 映画を見る<br><i>eiga o miru</i><br>(see a movie)                      | : | の / こと<br><i>no / koto</i><br>(to ; -ing) | ' to see a movie '                          |
| Sentence                                                          | + | Modal                                     |                                             |
| あしたは晴れる<br><i>Ashita wa hareru</i><br>(It will clear up tomorrow) | : | ようだ<br><i>yōda</i><br>(it appears)        | ' It looks like it will clear up tomorrow ' |
| ぼくは若い<br><i>Boku wa wakai</i><br>(I am young)                     | : | んだ<br><i>n da</i><br>(It is that)         | ' It is that I am young '                   |

Let's call the cohesive unit of *modifier + modified* an *Extended Sentential Unit* (=ESU). If all ESUs started at the beginning of the sentence, students would have no trouble identifying them. But in reality an ESU often comes somewhere between the beginning and the end of a sentence. Moreover, in written Japanese an ESU is quite frequently embedded within another ESU. The ability to identify each ESU in a complex sentence is a must for reading comprehension.

The following examples will serve to illustrate this point.

(1) a. 私は **辞書** をまだ使っている。

*Watashi wa jisho o mada tsukatte iru.*

(I'm still using the dictionary.)

b. 私は小さな **辞書** をまだ使っている。

*Watashi wa chisana jisho o mada tsukatte iru.*

(I'm still using the small dictionary.)

c. 私は父が買ってくれた小さな **辞書** をまだ使っている。

*Watashi wa chichi ga katte kureta chisana jisho o mada tsukatte iru.*

(I'm still using the small dictionary which my father bought for me.)

d. 私は中学に入った時に父が買ってくれた小さな **辞書** をまだ使っている。

*Watashi wa chūgaku ni haitta toki ni chichi ga katte kureta chisana jisho o mada tsukatte iru.*

(I'm still using the dictionary which my father bought for me when I entered junior high school.)

If we choose *jisho* ‘dictionary’ as the modified word, where does its modifier start in each sentence of example (1)? In other words, exactly what part of each sentence is the *ESU*? Since (1a) obviously doesn’t have any modifier, there is no *ESU*. How about in (1b)? The modifier is a simple adjective *chisana* ‘small’. In (1c) the modifier is the entire relative clause which starts with *chichi ga* ‘father (subject)’. Notice that the sentence-initial noun phrase *watashi wa* ‘I (subject / topic)’ is not a part of the *ESU* in question, because *watashi wa* is the subject of the main verb *tsukatte iru* ‘am using’. Sentence (1d) is the most complex sentence of the four. Where does the *ESU* for *jisho* start in (1d)? It starts from *chūgaku* ‘junior high school’, because the clause *chūgaku ni haitta toki ni* ‘when (I) entered junior high school’ modifies the verb *katte kureta* ‘(he) bought for me’.

A quick and accurate identification of an *ESU* is a prerequisite for reading comprehension. The following is a list of guidelines which will help students to identify *ESUs* in written Japanese.

#### *Guideline I*

A modified element (= *m.e.*) is typically a noun, a head noun of a relative clause, a nominalizer *no* or *koto*, a coordinate or a subordinate conjunction (such as *ga* ‘but’, *kara* ‘because’, *keredomo* ‘although’), a modal (such as *hazu da* ‘it is expected that ~’, *no da* ‘it is that ~’, *yōda* ‘it appears that ~’, *sōda* ‘I hear that ~’), an adjective, a verb or a particle, as shown in the *MODIFIER+MODIFIED* chart.

#### *Guideline II*

If an element preceding an *m.e.* modifies some element that comes after the *m.e.*, that element is outside the *ESU*.

Thus, if *kyō* ‘today’ in (2) is judged to modify *itta* ‘said’, an element that comes after the *m.e.* *to* ‘quote marker’, *kyō* is outside the *ESU*. But, if the same adverb is judged to modify *nai* ‘there isn’t’, then the adverb is a part of the *ESU*.

(2) ジョンは今日授業がないと言った。

*Jon wa kyō jugyō ga nai to itta.*

(Today John said that there wasn’t any class. / John said that there isn’t class today.)

#### *Guideline III*

A sentence-initial topic phrase *Noun Phrase+wa()* is very often considered outside an *ESU*, especially when the topic phrase is the main subject of the sentence. The same is true of a *Noun Phrase+mo()*.

Some more examples follow:

- (3) a. 私は / も子供が病気だったから行けなかった。  
*Watashi wa / mo kodomo ga byōki datta kara ikenakatta.*  
(I couldn't go there (either), because my child was ill.)
- b. 私は / も鈴木さんが行かなければ行かない。  
*Watashi wa / mo Suzuki-san ga ikanakereba ikanai.*  
(I won't go there (either) if Mr. Suzuki won't go there.)
- c. 山本は / も雪子が結婚したことを知らない。  
*Yamamoto wa / mo Yukiko ga kekkonshita koto o shiranai.*  
(Yamamoto doesn't know (either) that Yukiko got married.)
- d. きのうはここにあった本が今日はない。  
*Kinō wa koko ni atta hon ga kyō wa nai.*  
(The book which was here yesterday is not here today.)

In (3a) through (3c), *wa* and *mo* phrases are outside the *ESU* of the boxed *m.e.'s*, but in (3d) *wa* is inside the *ESU* of the *m.e.* *hon* 'book', because *wa* is used in this sentence as a contrast marker, not as a topic marker.

#### *Guideline IV*

When two sentences are combined by the conjunction *ga*(.) 'but', the first sentence is very often outside the *ESU* of the *m.e.* contained in the second sentence.

For example, in (4) the first sentence is outside the *ESU* of the respective *m.e.'s*.

- (4) a. 宿題がたくさんあったが、疲れていたのですぐ寝てしまった。  
*Shukudai ga takusan atta ga, tsukarete ita node sugu nete shi-matta.*  
(I had a lot of homework to do but I went to sleep right away because I was tired.)
- b. 「将軍」を読むつもりだったが、テレビで見たから読むのをやめた。  
 $"Shōgun"$  o yomu tsumori datta ga, *terebi de mita kara yomu no o yameta.*  
(I intended to read *Shogun*, but I quit because I had seen it on TV.)

When two sentences are combined by the *te-form* of a verb / adjective, the first sentence is either inside or outside the *ESU* depending on the context, as illustrated by (5).

- (5) a. 洋子は頭が痛くて仕方がないと言った。  
*Yōko wa atama ga itakute shikata ga nai to itta.*  
(Yoko said that she had a terrible headache.)

- b. 洋子は京都に行って、前から買おうと思っていた着物を買った。

*Yōko wa Kyōto ni itte, mae kara kaō to omotte ita kimono o katta.*

(Yoko went to Kyoto, and bought the *kimono* which she had been thinking of buying for some time.)

In (5a) the *ESU* includes the first sentence, whereas in (5b) it doesn't.

#### Guideline V

When an *m.e.* is a modal, its *ESU* normally extends to the beginning of the sentence, including *wa / mo* phrase.

- (6) a. リサは来年日本へ行くらしい。

*Risa wa rainen Nihon e iku rashii.*

(It seems that Lisa is going to Japan next year.)

- b. ボブには日本語は難しすぎるようだ。

*Bobu ni wa nihongo wa muzukashisugiru yōda.*

(It appears that Japanese is too difficult for Bob.)

- c. あんな所には行きたくないんだ。

*Anna tokoro ni wa ikitakunai n da.*

(Lit. It is that I don't want to go to such a place.)

- d. ナンシーは大学をやめるそうだ。

*Nanshi wa daigaku o yameru sōda.*

(I heard that Nancy is going to quit college.)

#### Guideline VI

When an *m.e.* is the quote marker *to*, Guideline III is overridden, because a quote is supposed to follow the original source as closely as possible; if *wa* is in the original sentence, that *wa* has to be quoted. Examples follow:

- (7) a. 人間は考えるあしだとパスカルが言った。

*Ningen wa kangaeru ashi da to Pasukaru ga itta.*

(Pascal said that a human is a thinking reed.)

- b. 本にペットは老人にいいと書いてあった。

*Hon ni petto wa rōjin ni ii to kaite atta.*

(It was written in a book that pets are good for elderly people.)

#### Guideline VII

Some *m.e.*'s allow their *ESU* to extend beyond the sentence boundary. This is especially true with sentence-initial conjunctions such as *shikashi* 'but', *shitagatte* 'therefore', *sunawachi* 'namely', *tadashi* 'but', *tokoro ga* 'but' and *da kara* 'so' and the modal *no da* 'it is that ~'.

- (8) a. 幸子は大学を出た。しかし仕事はなかった。  
**Sachiko wa daigaku o deta.** **Shikashi** shigoto wa nakatta.  
 (Sachiko graduated from college. But she didn't get a job.)
- b. 急に胸が苦しくなったんです。だから病院に行きました。  
**Kyūni mune ga kurushiku natta n desu.** **Da kara** byōin ni ikimashita.  
 (Suddenly I had a pain in my chest, so I went to the hospital.)
- c. あしたは朝五時に起きます。五時半の汽車に乗るんです。  
**Ashita wa asa goji ni okimasu.** **Gojihan no kisha ni noru n desu.**  
 (I'll get up at five o'clock tomorrow morning. It's because I'm going to catch the 5:30 train.)

So far, seven basic guidelines which can be used to identify *ESU* have been presented. The student should read Japanese carefully, searching for *ESUs*, especially for the following four *ESUs* that create enormous difficulties.

- (i) Sentence + Conjunction
- (ii) Relative Clause + Noun
- (iii) Sentence + Nominalizer (*no* / *koto*)
- (iv) Sentence + Modal

For your practice, a short, simple passage containing 10 boxed *m.e.'s* is provided below. Underline the *ESUs* for each *m.e.* The answers are given below the passage.

### Practice Passage

友達に借りた車<sup>1</sup>で花子さんと一緒に先週京都まで行ってきました。ぼくはハイウェーを走るの<sup>2</sup>は初めてだったので<sup>3</sup>少し緊張しました。けれども一時間ぐらい運転していると<sup>4</sup>スピードにもなれてしまい、時々眠りそう<sup>5</sup>になりました。京都までに五度ぐらいサービスエリアに入ってコーヒーを飲みました。ぼくは隣に座っていた花子さん<sup>6</sup>といろいろ話しながら<sup>7</sup>行ったから<sup>8</sup>京都もそんなに遠く感じませんでした。こんな楽しい旅行なら<sup>9</sup>もう一度してみたいと<sup>10</sup>思います。

*Tomodachi ni karita kuruma*<sup>1</sup> de Hanako-san to isshonī senshū Kyōto made itte kimashita. Boku wa haiwē o hashiru *no*<sup>2</sup> wa hajimete datta *node*<sup>3</sup> sukoshi kinchōshimashita. Keredomo ichijikan gurai untenshite iru *to*<sup>4</sup> supido ni mo nareteshimai, tokidoki nemuri *sō*<sup>5</sup> ni narimashita. Kyōto made ni godo gurai sābisueria ni haitte kōhi o nomimashita. Boku wa tonari ni suwatte ita *Hanako-san*<sup>6</sup> to iroiro hanashi *nagara*<sup>7</sup> itta *kara*<sup>8</sup> Kyōto mo sonna ni tōku kanjimasen-deshita. Konna tanoshii ryokō *nara*<sup>9</sup> mō ichido shite mitai *to*<sup>10</sup>omoimasu.

(Last week I went to Kyoto with Hanako in a car I borrowed from my friend. I was a little nervous because it was the first time that I had driven on the

highway. But after having driven about an hour I became used to the speed, and every now and then I almost fell asleep. Before we reached Kyoto, I stopped at service areas about five times and drank coffee. Because I drove while talking a lot with Hanako sitting next to me, I didn't feel that Kyoto was that far. If the trip is this pleasant, I would like to make it again.)

---

|           |        |        |           |        |      |      |      |      |       |        |        |        |        |        |
|-----------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|------|------|------|------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. 友達     | 2. さうで | 3. さうで | 4. 一時間    | 5. 眠り  | 6. 瞳 | 7. 瞳 | 8. 瞳 | 9. 瞳 | 10. 瞳 | tonari | tonari | tonari | tonari | tonari |
| tomodachi | haiwe  | haiwe  | ichijikan | nemuri | 6.   | 7.   | 8.   | 9.   | 10.   | tonari | tonari | tonari | tonari | tonari |

Answers: The words given below indicate the first words of the ESUs.

## GRAMMAR INDEX

Note: X <Y> indicates that X is found under Y.

**adverb** *amari, dō, ichiban, mada, mō, sekkaku, yahari*  
**auxiliary** *darō, mashō, sōda<sup>1</sup>*  
**auxiliary adjective** *hoshii<sup>2</sup>, mitai-dā <yōdā>, nikui, rashii, sōda<sup>2</sup>, tai, yasui, yōda, yōni<sup>2</sup>*  
**auxiliary verb** *ageru<sup>2</sup>, aru<sup>2</sup>, dasu, garu, hajimeru, iku<sup>2</sup>, iru<sup>2</sup>, kudasai, kururu<sup>2</sup>, kuru<sup>2</sup>, miru, morau<sup>2</sup>, nasai, oku, owaru, rareru<sup>1,2</sup>, shimau, sugiru*  
**causative** *saseru, sasu <saseru>*  
**causative passive** *saserareru <rare-ru<sup>1</sup>>*  
**cause** *de<sup>3</sup>, kara<sup>3</sup>, node, tame (ni), te*  
**cleft sentence** *~ no wa ~ da*  
**command**  $\Rightarrow$  imperative  
**comparison** *hō ga ~ yori, yori*  
**conditional** *ba, nara, tara, to<sup>4</sup>*  
**conjecture** *darō, rashii, sōda<sup>2</sup>, yōda*  
**conjunction** *ato de, ba, ga<sup>2</sup>, kara<sup>2,3</sup>, keredo (mo), mae ni, nagara, nara, node, noni<sup>1,2</sup>, shi, sore de, sore de wa, sore kara, sore nara, soretomo, so-shite, suru to, tara, tatte, te mo, to<sup>4</sup>, toka, uchi ni, ya, yōni<sup>1</sup>*  
**contrastive** *wa<sup>1</sup>, jibun<sup>2</sup>*  
**coordinate conjunction** *ga<sup>2</sup>*  
**copula** *da*  
**dependent noun**  $\Rightarrow$  noun  
**direct object marker** *o<sup>1</sup>*  
**ellipsis** Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 3  
**empathy**  $\Rightarrow$  viewpoint

**exhaustive listing** *ga<sup>1</sup>, to*  
**existence** *aru<sup>1</sup>, iru<sup>1</sup>*  
**experience** *koto ga aru<sup>1</sup>*  
**gerund** *te*  
**giving and receiving verb** *ageru<sup>1,2</sup>, kureru<sup>1,2</sup>, morau<sup>1,2</sup>*  
**honorific expression** *o ~ ni naru*  
**honorifics** *o-, o ~ ni naru, o ~ suru*, Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 6  
**humble expression** *o-, o ~ suru*  
**imperative** *na, nasai*, Appendix 1  
**indefinite pronoun** *no<sup>2</sup>*  
**inexhaustive listing** *~ tari ~ tari suru, ya*  
**infix** *-shi-*  
**nominalizer** *koto<sup>2</sup>, no<sup>3</sup>*  
**noun** *hazu, koto<sup>1</sup>, mama, mono (da), tame (ni), toki, tsumori*  
**particle** *bakari, dai, dake, de<sup>1,2,3,4</sup>, demo, e, ga<sup>1</sup>, goto ni, hodo, ka<sup>1,2</sup>, ka (dō ka), kai, kara<sup>1</sup>, kashira, kurai, made, made ni, mo<sup>1,2</sup>, na, nado, nanka <nado>, ne, ni<sup>1,2,3,4,5,6,7</sup>, ni shite wa, no<sup>1,4</sup>, o<sup>1,2,3,4</sup>, shika, to<sup>1,2,3</sup>, to shite, to shite wa, tte<sup>1,2</sup>, wa<sup>1,2</sup>, yo, yori<sup>1,2</sup>, zutsu*  
**passive** *rareru<sup>1</sup>*, Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 5  
**phrase** *aida (ni), ba yokatta, dake de (wa) naku ~ (mo), hō ga ii, hō ga ~ yori, kawari ni, koto ga aru<sup>1,2</sup>, koto ga dekiru, koto ni naru, koto ni suru, koto wa, nai de, nakereba naranai, naku naru, nakute, ni chigainai,*

*ni suru, no da, o ~ ni naru, o ~ suru, tara dō desu ka, tamaranai, ~ tari ~ tari suru, te mo ii, to ieba, to iu, tokoro da<sup>1,2</sup>, wa ikenai, wake da, yōni iu, yōni naru, yōni suru, yō to omou, zu ni <nai de>*

**plural** -tachi

**polite expression** ⇒ honorifics

**possessive** no<sup>1</sup>

**potential** kikoeru, koto ga dekiru, mieru, rareru<sup>2</sup>

**prefix** go- <o->, mai-, o-

**pronoun** jibun<sup>1,2</sup>, no<sup>2</sup>

**purpose** ni<sup>3</sup>, noni<sup>2</sup>, tame ni

**quotation** to<sup>3</sup>, tte<sup>2</sup>

**question marker** dai, ka<sup>2</sup>, kai

**reason** de<sup>3</sup>, kara<sup>3</sup>, node, tame (ni), te

**relative clause** Relative Clause

**request** kudasai

**Semantic Derivations** De, Ni, To

**sentence-final particle** dai, ka<sup>2</sup>, kai, kashira, na, ne, no<sup>4</sup>, wa<sup>2</sup>, yo, Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 7

**structure** ~ mo ~ mo, ~ no wa ~ da, ~ wa ~ da, ~ wa ~ ga

**subject marker** ga<sup>1</sup>

**subordinate conjunction** aida (ni), ato de, ba, kara<sup>2,3</sup>, keredo (mo), mae ni, nagara, nara, node, noni<sup>1,2</sup>, tame (ni), tara, tatte, te mo, to<sup>4</sup>, toki, uchi ni, yōni<sup>1</sup>

**suffix** -chan <-sama>, -goro, -kata, -kun, -sa, -sama, -san <-sama> -tachi, -ya

**superlative** ichiban

**tag question** ne

**te-form** te

**topic** to ieba, to ittara <to ieba>, to kitara <to ieba>, ttara <to ieba>, tte<sup>1</sup>, wa<sup>1</sup>, Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 2

**viewpoint** ageru<sup>1,2</sup>, iku<sup>1,2</sup>, jibun<sup>1</sup>, kureru<sup>1,2</sup>, kuru<sup>1,2</sup>, morau<sup>1,2</sup>, passive, tai, Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 9

**volitional** mashō

## ENGLISH INDEX

Note: X <Y> indicates that X is found under Y.

### A

- a(n) *ga*<sup>1</sup>  
**about** *bakari, -goro, gurai* <*kurai*>, *kurai*  
**across** *o*<sup>2</sup>  
**after** *ato de, kara*<sup>2</sup>  
**after all** *kekkyoku* <*yahari*>, *yahari*  
**after that** *sore kara*  
**almost did s.t.** *tokoro da*<sup>2</sup>  
**along** *o*<sup>2</sup>  
**a lot of** *ōi, ōzei* <*ōi*>, *takusan* <*ōi*>  
**already** *mō*  
**also** *mo*<sup>1</sup>, *yahari*  
**although** *keredomo, noni*<sup>1</sup>, *te mo*  
**and** *de*<sup>3</sup>, *ni* <*to*>, *soshite, te, to*<sup>1</sup>, *to-ka, ya*  
**and so on** *nado*  
**and the like** *nado*  
**and then** *sore kara*  
**and what is more** *shi*  
**any** *mo*<sup>2</sup>  
**appear** *sōda*<sup>2</sup>, *yōda*  
**approximately** *bakari, gurai* <*kurai*>, *hodo, kurai*  
**around** *goro*  
**as** *to shite, yōni*<sup>2</sup>  
**as expected** *yahari, yappari* <*yahari*>  
**as far as** *made*  
**as for** *wa*<sup>1</sup>  
**as it is** *mama*  
**as many / much / long as ~** *mo*<sup>2</sup>  
**at** *de*<sup>1,4</sup>, *ni*<sup>1,6</sup>

**at the time when** *toki*  
**audible** *kikoeru*

### B

- be** *aru*<sup>1</sup>, *iru*<sup>1</sup>  
**be -able** *rareru*<sup>2</sup>  
**be able to** *koto ga dekiru, rareru*<sup>2</sup>  
**be about to do s.t.** *tokoro da*<sup>2</sup>  
**because** *kara*<sup>3</sup>, *mono (da), node*  
**because ~ not ~** *nakute*  
**because of** *de*<sup>3</sup>, *tame (ni)*  
**be done** *aru*<sup>2</sup>  
**be -ed** *rareru*<sup>1</sup>  
**before** *mae ni, uchi ni*  
**begin to** *dasu, hajimeru, kuru*<sup>2</sup>  
**be in a place where it takes ~ to get to** *tokoro da*<sup>1</sup>  
**be -ing** *iru*<sup>2</sup>  
**be in the midst of doing s.t.** *tokoro da*<sup>2</sup>  
**be like** *yōda*  
**be ready to do s.t.** *bakari*  
**both ~ and ~** *mo ~ mo ~*  
**but** *daga* <*ga*<sup>2</sup>>, *dakedo* <*ga*<sup>2</sup>>, *demo* <*ga*<sup>2</sup>>, *ga*<sup>2</sup>, *keredomo, shikashi* <*ga*<sup>2</sup>>  
**by** *de*<sup>2</sup>, *made ni, ni*<sup>3</sup>  
**by (the time when)** *made ni*

### C

- called** *to iu*  
**can do s.t.** *koto ga dekiru, rareru*<sup>2</sup>  
**can hear** *kikoeru*  
**cannot do s.t.** *wa ikenai*

**can see** *mieru*

**come** *kuru<sup>1</sup>*

**come about** *kuru<sup>2</sup>*

**come to** *kuru<sup>2</sup>*

**continue** *iku<sup>2</sup>*

**considering that** *ni shite wa*

**cost** *suru<sup>4</sup>*

## D

**decide on** *ni suru*

**decide to do s.t.** *koto ni kimeru*

*<koto ni suru>, koto ni suru*

**despite the fact that** *noni<sup>1</sup>*

**difficult to do s.t.** *nikui*

**dislike** *kiraida*

**do** *suru<sup>1</sup>*

**do in such a way that** *yōni suru*

**do me or s.o. a favor by doing s.t.** *kureru<sup>2</sup>*

**do not do ~ and ~** *nai de*

**Don't do s.t.** *na, wa ikenai*

**do s.o. a favor by doing s.t.** *ageru<sup>2</sup>*

**do s.t. and see** *miru*

**do s.t. for s.o.** *ageru<sup>2</sup>*

**do s.t. in advance** *oku*

**do s.t. too much** *sugiru*

**do things like ~ and ~** *~ tari ~*

*tari suru*

**due to** *de<sup>3</sup>*

**during (the time when)** *aida (ni),*

*chū (ni) <uchi ni>, uchi ni*

## E

**easy to** *yasui*

**either** *mo<sup>1</sup>*

**either ~ or ~** *soretomo*

**even** *demo, made, mo<sup>2</sup>*

**even if** *tatte, te mo*

**even though** *noni<sup>1</sup>*

**every** *goto ni, mai-, oki ni <goto ni>*

**exist** *aru<sup>1</sup>, iru<sup>1</sup>*

## F

**feel** *suru<sup>3</sup>*

**feel like** *soda<sup>2</sup>*

**few** *sukunai, wazuka <sukunai>*

**finish doing s.t.** *-owaru, shimau*

**for** *de<sup>2</sup>, ni<sup>2</sup>, ni shite wa, to shite wa*

~ **for example** *nado*

**for the purpose of ~** *noni<sup>2</sup>, tame (ni)*

**for the sake of ~** *tame (ni)*

**from** *de<sup>2</sup>, kara<sup>1</sup>, ni<sup>3</sup>*

## G

**get** *morau<sup>1</sup>*

**get -ed** *rareru<sup>1</sup>*

**get s.o. to do s.t.** *saseru*

**get to know** *shiru*

**give** *ageru<sup>1</sup>, kureru<sup>1</sup>*

**go** *iku<sup>1</sup>*

**go ahead and do s.t.** *oku*

**go on -ing** *iku<sup>2</sup>*

**grow** *kuru<sup>2</sup>*

## H

**had better do s.t.** *hō ga ii*

**hard to do s.t.** *nikui*

**have** *aru<sup>1</sup>, suru<sup>2</sup>, ~ wa ~ ga*

**have been done** *aru<sup>2</sup>*

**have done s.t.** *iru<sup>2</sup>, koto ga aru<sup>1</sup>, shi-mau*

**have just done s.t.** *bakari, tokoro da<sup>2</sup>*

**have s.o. / s.t. do s.t.** *morau<sup>2</sup>, saseru*

**have s.t. done by s.o.** *morau<sup>2</sup>*

**have to** *nai to ikenai <nakereba nara-*

*nai*), *nakereba ikenai* <*nakereba naranai*>, *nakereba naranai*, *nakute wa ikenai* <*nakereba naranai*>, *nakute wa naranai* <*nakereba naranai*>, *neba naranai* <*nakereba naranai*>

**hear** *suru*<sup>3</sup>

**how** *dō*

**How could ~!** *mono da*

**how to** *hōhō*, -*kata*

### I

**I expect that ~** *hazu*

**if** *ba*, *ka*<sup>2</sup>, *nara*, *tara*, *to*<sup>4</sup>

**if it is the case that ~** *nara*

**if it is true that ~** *nara*

**if (or not)** *ka* (*dō ka*)

**I hear / heard that ~** *sōda*<sup>1</sup>

**I tell you** *yo*

**in** *de*<sup>1,4</sup>, *ni*<sup>1,6</sup>, *o*<sup>2</sup>

**indeed ~ (but ~)** ~ *koto wa* (~ *ga*)

**indeed s.o. does s.t. alright (but ~)** ~ *koto wa* (~ *ga*)

**in front of** *mae ni*

**-ing** *koto*<sup>2</sup>, *no*<sup>3</sup>, *te*

**in order to do s.t.** *noni*<sup>2</sup>, *tame ni*

**in place of** *kawari ni*

**in spite of the fact that ~** *noni*<sup>1</sup>

**in such a way that** *yōni*<sup>1</sup>

**instead of** *kawari ni*

**intend to** *tsumori da*, *yō to omou*

**in that case** *sore nara*

**in the process of doing s.t.** *noni*<sup>2</sup>

**isn't it? / is it? / etc.** *ne*

**it is all right if ~** *te mo ii*

**it is expected that ~** *hazu*

**it is natural that ~** *hazu*

**it is that ~** ~ *no da*

**it is ~ that ~** ~ *no wa* ~ *da*  
**it will be decided that ~** *koto ni naru*

**I wonder** *kashira*

### J

**just** *bakari*, *dake*

### L

**leave** *oku*

**leave as it is** *mama*

**Let's do s.t.** *mashō*

**let s.o. / s.t. do s.t.** *saseru*

**like** *sukida*, *yōni*<sup>2</sup>

**little** *sukunai*, *wazuka* <*sukunai*>

**look** *sōda*<sup>2</sup>

**look as if** *yōda*

**look like** *rashii*, *sōda*<sup>2</sup>, *yōda*

### M

**make it** *ni suru*

**make s.o. / s.t. do s.t.** *saseru*

**manner of** -*kata*

**many** *ōi*, *ōzei* <*ōi*>, *takusan* <*ōi*>

**may** *te mo ii*

**might** *kamoshirenai*

**more ~ than ~** ~ *hō ga* ~ *yori*

**most** *ichiban*

**Mr. / Mrs. / Miss / Ms.** -*sama*, -*san*  
 <-*sama*>

**much** *ōi*, *takusan* <*ōi*>

**must be** *ni chigainai*

**must do s.t.** *nakereba naranai* (⇒ have to)

**must not do s.t.** *wa ikenai*

### N

**need** *iru*<sup>3</sup>

**neither ~ nor ~** ~ mo ~ mo (~ nai)  
**-ness** -mi <-sa>, -sa  
**no ~ but** shika  
**no matter wh-** demo  
**(not) any** mo<sup>2</sup>  
**(not) any longer** mō  
**(not) ~ any more** mō (nai), (nai) yōni naru, naku naru  
**(not) as ~ as** hodo  
**(not) ~ either** mo<sup>1</sup>  
**(not) even (one)** mo<sup>2</sup>  
**not only ~ but also** ~dake de (wa) naku ~ mo  
**(not) very (much)** amari, anmari <amari>  
**(not) yet** mada  
**no wonder** wake da  
**now** mō

**O**

**of** no<sup>1</sup>  
**on** de<sup>1,2,4</sup>, ni<sup>1,4,6</sup>  
**one** no<sup>2</sup>  
**only** bakari, dake, shika  
**onto** ni<sup>4</sup>  
**out of** kara<sup>1</sup>  
**or** ka<sup>1</sup>, soretomo  
**over** o<sup>2</sup>  
**owing to** tame (ni)  
**own** jibun<sup>1,2</sup>

**P**

**per** mai-  
**play** suru<sup>1</sup>  
**Please do s.t.** kudasai  
**probably** darō

**R**

**rather ~ than ~** yori  
**reach the point where ~** yōni naru  
**receive** morau<sup>1</sup>

**S**

's no<sup>1</sup>  
**seem** rashii, yōda  
**-self** jibun<sup>1,2</sup>  
**Shall I / we do s.t.?** mashō  
**should** hazu, mono(da), ~ hō ga ii  
**should like to ~** -tai  
**should not do s.t.** wa ikenai  
**show signs of ~** -garu  
**since** kara<sup>2,3</sup>, node  
**smell** suru<sup>3</sup>  
**so** kara<sup>3</sup>, node, sore de  
**sometimes ~ and sometimes ~**  
  ~ tari ~ tari suru

**so that** yōni

**Speaking of ~** to ieba, tte<sup>1</sup>, wa  
**start to do s.t.** dasu, kuru<sup>2</sup>  
**stay** iru<sup>1</sup>  
**still** mada, yahari  
**store** -ya

**T**

**take the trouble of doing s.t.** sek-kaku, wazawaza <sekkaku>  
**Talking about ~** to ieba, tte<sup>1</sup>, wa<sup>1</sup>  
**tell to do s.t.** yōni iu  
**than** yori  
**that** koto<sup>2</sup>, no<sup>3</sup>, to<sup>3</sup>, to iu, tte<sup>2</sup>  
**that's all** dake  
**the** wa<sup>1</sup>  
**then** sore de wa, sore kara, sore nara,  
  suru to

|                              |                                                                    |                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>there are times when</b>  | <b>~</b>                                                           | <i>koto ga</i> |
| <i>aru</i> <sup>2</sup>      |                                                                    |                |
| <b>there was a time when</b> | <b>~</b>                                                           | <i>koto ga</i> |
| <i>aru</i> <sup>1</sup>      |                                                                    |                |
| <b>therefore</b>             | <i>sore de</i>                                                     |                |
| <b>thing</b>                 | <i>koto</i> <sup>1</sup> , <i>mono</i> < <i>koto</i> >             |                |
| <b>things like</b>           | <i>nado</i>                                                        |                |
| <b>think ~ will</b>          | <i>yō to omou</i>                                                  |                |
| <b>though</b>                | <i>keredomo</i>                                                    |                |
| <b>through</b>               | <i>o</i> <sup>2</sup> , <i>made</i>                                |                |
| <b>till</b>                  | <i>made</i>                                                        |                |
| <b>to (infinitive)</b>       | <i>koto</i> <sup>2</sup> , <i>no</i> <sup>3</sup>                  |                |
| <b>to</b>                    | <i>e</i> , <i>ni</i> <sup>2,7</sup>                                |                |
| <b>to do s.t.</b>            | <i>ni</i> <sup>5</sup> , <i>tame ni</i> , <i>noni</i> <sup>2</sup> |                |
| <b>to make up for</b>        | <i>kawari ni</i>                                                   |                |
| <b>to the extent that</b>    | <i>hodo</i>                                                        |                |
| <b>too</b>                   | <i>mo</i> <sup>1</sup> , <i>sugiru</i>                             |                |
| <b>towards</b>               | <i>e</i> , <i>ni</i> <sup>7</sup>                                  |                |
| <b>try to do s.t.</b>        | <i>miru</i> , <i>yō to suru</i> < <i>miru</i> >                    |                |

U

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>unbearably</b> | <i>tamaranai</i>      |
| <b>unchanged</b>  | <i>mama</i>           |
| <b>understand</b> | <i>wakaru</i>         |
| <b>until</b>      | <i>made</i>           |
| <b>up to</b>      | <i>made, made de</i>  |
| <b>used to</b>    | <i>mono da</i>        |
| <b>using</b>      | <i>de<sup>2</sup></i> |

V

## **visible**      *mieru*

W

**want s.o. to do s.t.** *hoshii*<sup>2</sup>

**want s.t.** *hoshii*<sup>1</sup>

**want to do s.t.** *-tai*

**way of** *-kata*

**what** *koto*<sup>1</sup>

**What about doing s.t.?** ~ *tara dō desu ka*

**when** *tara, to*<sup>4</sup>, *toki*

**whether** *ka*<sup>2</sup>

**whether or not** *ka dō ka*

**while** *aida (ni), nagara, uchi (ni)*

**Why don't you do s.t.?** ~ *tara dō desu ka*

**(I / We) will do s.t.** *mashō*

**(I) wish ~ had done s.t.** *-ba yokatta*

**with** *de*<sup>2</sup>, *to*<sup>2</sup>

**with effort** *sekkaku, wazawaza <sek-kaku>*

**without doing s.t.** *nai de, zu ni <nai de>*

**would** *nara*

**would like to do s.t.** *-tai*

**Y**

**yet** *mada, mó*

**you know** *ne, yo*

## JAPANESE INDEX

Note: X <Y> indicates that X is found under Y.

### A

|                                                                         |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| <i>ageru</i> <sup>1</sup> 's.o. gives s.t. to s.o.'.....                | 63 |
| <i>ageru</i> <sup>2</sup> 's.o. gives s.o. a favor by doing s.t.' ..... | 65 |
| <i>aida (ni)</i> .....                                                  | 67 |
| <i>amari</i> .....                                                      | 72 |
| <i>anmari</i> < <i>amari</i> > .....                                    | 72 |
| <i>aru</i> <sup>1</sup> 'exist' .....                                   | 73 |
| <i>aru</i> <sup>2</sup> 's.t. has been done' .....                      | 76 |
| <i>ato de</i> .....                                                     | 78 |

### B

|                                                                          |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| <i>ba</i> .....                                                          | 81 |
| <i>bakari</i> .....                                                      | 84 |
| <i>bakari de (wa) naku ~ (mo) &lt;dake de (wa) naku ~ (mo)&gt;</i> ..... | 97 |
| <i>ba yokatta</i> .....                                                  | 87 |

### C

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>-chan</i> <-sama> .....               | 384 |
| <i>chau</i> < <i>shimau</i> > .....      | 405 |
| <i>chimau</i> < <i>shimau</i> > .....    | 405 |
| <i>chittomo</i> < <i>amari</i> > .....   | 72  |
| <i>chū (ni)</i> < <i>uchi ni</i> > ..... | 512 |

### D

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>da</i> <~ wa ~ da>.....                   | 521 |
| <i>daga</i> < <i>ga</i> <sup>2</sup> > ..... | 120 |
| <i>dai</i> .....                             | 90  |
| <i>da kara</i> < <i>sore de</i> > .....      | 413 |
| <i>dake</i> .....                            | 93  |
| <i>dake de (wa) naku ~ (mo)</i> .....        | 97  |

|                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>dakedo</i> < <i>ga</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....           | 120 |
| <i>~dara</i> <~ <i>tara</i> > .....                      | 455 |
| <i>darō</i> .....                                        | 100 |
| <i>~dasu</i> .....                                       | 102 |
| <i>-datte</i> <- <i>tatte</i> >.....                     | 462 |
| <i>de</i> <- <i>te</i> >.....                            | 464 |
| <i>de</i> <sup>1</sup> [location] .....                  | 105 |
| <i>de</i> <sup>2</sup> [instrument].....                 | 106 |
| <i>de</i> <sup>3</sup> [ <i>te-form of desu</i> ] .....  | 107 |
| <i>de</i> <sup>4</sup> [time].....                       | 109 |
| <i>de ageru</i> < <i>ageru</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....      | 65  |
| <i>de aru</i> < <i>aru</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....          | 76  |
| <i>de hoshii</i> < <i>hoshii</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....    | 146 |
| <i>de iru</i> < <i>iru</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....          | 155 |
| <i>de itadaku</i> < <i>morau</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....    | 263 |
| <i>de kara</i> < <i>kara</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....        | 177 |
| <i>de kudasai</i> <~ <i>kudasai</i> > .....              | 209 |
| <i>de kudasaru</i> < <i>kureru</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....  | 216 |
| <i>de kureru</i> < <i>kureru</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....    | 216 |
| <i>de miru</i> < <i>miru</i> > .....                     | 246 |
| <i>demo</i> 'even' .....                                 | 111 |
| <i>demo</i> < <i>ga</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....             | 120 |
| <i>de mo</i> < <i>te mo</i> > 'even if ~ ' .....         | 468 |
| <i>de mo ii</i> <~ <i>te mo ii</i> > .....               | 471 |
| <i>de moraitai</i> < <i>hoshii</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....  | 146 |
| <i>de morau</i> < <i>morau</i> <sup>2</sup> > .....      | 263 |
| <i>de oku</i> < <i>oku</i> > .....                       | 358 |
| <i>de sashiageru</i> < <i>ageru</i> <sup>2</sup> > ..... | 65  |
| <i>de shikata ga nai</i> < <i>tamaranai</i> > .....      | 447 |
| <i>de shimau</i> < <i>shimau</i> >.....                  | 403 |
| <i>deshō</i> < <i>darō</i> > .....                       | 100 |
| <i>desu</i> <~ <i>wa</i> ~ <i>da</i> >.....              | 521 |
| <i>de tamaranai</i> < <i>tamaranai</i> > .....           | 446 |

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>de wa ikenai</i> <~wa ikenai>     | 528 |
| <i>de wa naranai</i> <~wa ikenai>    | 528 |
| <i>de yaru</i> <ageru <sup>2</sup> > | 67  |
| <i>dō</i>                            | 114 |
| <i>-domo</i> <-tachi>                | 440 |

**E**

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| <i>e</i> [direction]              | 116 |
| <i>eru</i> <rareru <sup>2</sup> > | 370 |

**G**

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>ga</i> <sup>1</sup> [subject marker] | 118 |
| <i>ga</i> <sup>2</sup> 'but'            | 120 |
| ~ <i>garu</i>                           | 123 |
| - <i>gata</i> <-tachi>                  | 440 |
| <i>go-</i> < <i>o-</i> >                | 343 |
| <i>goro</i>                             | 126 |
| <i>goto ni</i>                          | 128 |
| <i>gurai</i> < <i>kurai</i> >           | 213 |

**H**

|                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ~ <i>hajimeru</i>                                 | 131 |
| <i>hazu</i>                                       | 133 |
| <i>hodo</i>                                       | 135 |
| <i>hōhō</i> <-kata>                               | 183 |
| <i>hō ga ii</i>                                   | 138 |
| ~ <i>hō ga</i> ~ <i>yori</i>                      | 140 |
| <i>hoshii</i> <sup>1</sup> 'want s.t.'            | 144 |
| <i>hoshii</i> <sup>2</sup> 'want s.o. to do s.t.' | 146 |

**I**

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>ichiban</i>                       | 148 |
| <i>ikaga</i> < <i>dō</i> >           | 114 |
| <i>iku</i> <sup>1</sup> 'go'         | 149 |
| <i>iku</i> <sup>2</sup> 'go on -ing' | 151 |
| <i>iru</i> <sup>1</sup> 'exist'      | 153 |
| <i>iru</i> <sup>2</sup> 'be -ing'    | 155 |
| <i>iru</i> <sup>3</sup> 'need'       | 157 |

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>itadaku</i> < <i>morau</i> <sup>1</sup> > | 262 |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|

**J**

|                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>jau</i> < <i>shimau</i> >                | 405 |
| <i>jibun</i> <sup>1</sup> [empathy marker]  | 159 |
| <i>jibun</i> <sup>2</sup> [contrast marker] | 161 |
| <i>jimau</i> < <i>shimau</i> >              | 405 |

**K**

|                                                              |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>ka</i> <sup>1</sup> 'or'                                  | 164 |
| <i>ka</i> <sup>2</sup> [question marker]                     | 166 |
| <i>ka</i> ( <i>dō ka</i> )                                   | 168 |
| <i>kai</i>                                                   | 170 |
| <i>kamoshirenai</i>                                          | 173 |
| <i>kanā</i> < <i>kashira</i> >                               | 182 |
| <i>ka ne</i> < <i>ne</i> >                                   | 288 |
| <i>kara</i> <sup>1</sup> 'from'                              | 176 |
| <i>kara</i> <sup>2</sup> 'after doing s.t.'                  | 177 |
| <i>kara</i> <sup>3</sup> 'because'                           | 179 |
| <i>kara ne</i> < <i>ne</i> >                                 | 288 |
| <i>kashira</i>                                               | 181 |
| - <i>kata</i>                                                | 183 |
| <i>kawari ni</i>                                             | 184 |
| <i>kedo</i> < <i>keredomo</i> >                              | 188 |
| <i>kedomo</i> < <i>keredomo</i> >                            | 188 |
| <i>kekkyoku</i> < <i>yahari</i> >                            | 538 |
| <i>keredo</i> < <i>keredomo</i> >                            | 188 |
| <i>keredomo</i>                                              | 187 |
| <i>kesshite</i> < <i>amarī</i> >                             | 72  |
| <i>kikeru</i> < <i>kikoeru</i> >                             | 188 |
| <i>kikoeru</i>                                               | 188 |
| <i>kiraida</i>                                               | 190 |
| <i>koto</i> <sup>1</sup> 'thing'                             | 191 |
| <i>koto</i> <sup>2</sup> [nominalizer]                       | 193 |
| <i>koto ga aru</i> <sup>1</sup> 'there was a time when<br>~' | 196 |
| <i>koto ga aru</i> <sup>2</sup> 'there are times when<br>~'  | 198 |

|                                                                    |               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <i>koto ga dekiru</i>                                              | 200           |
| <i>koto ni kimeru</i> < <i>koto ni suru</i> >                      | 204           |
| <i>koto ni naru</i>                                                | 202           |
| <i>koto ni natte iru</i> < <i>koto ni naru</i> >                   | 202           |
| <i>koto ni shite iru</i> < <i>koto ni suru</i> >                   | 204           |
| <i>koto ni suru</i>                                                | 204           |
| <i>koto wa</i> ‘indeed ~ but’                                      | 206           |
| ~ <i>kudasai</i>                                                   | 209           |
| <i>kudasaru</i> <~ <i>kudasai</i> , <i>kureru</i> <sup>1,2</sup> > | 210, 215, 218 |
| - <i>kun</i>                                                       | 211           |
| <i>kurai</i>                                                       | 212           |
| <i>kureru</i> <sup>1</sup> ‘s.o. gives s.t. to me’                 | 213           |
| <i>kureru</i> <sup>2</sup> ‘s.o. gives me a favor by doing s.t.’   | 216           |
| <i>kuru</i> <sup>1</sup> ‘come’                                    | 219           |
| <i>kuru</i> <sup>2</sup> ‘begin to, come to’                       | 221           |

**M**

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| <i>mada</i>                       | 224 |
| <i>made</i>                       | 225 |
| <i>made de</i> < <i>made ni</i> > | 228 |
| <i>made ni</i>                    | 228 |
| <i>mae ni</i>                     | 231 |
| <i>mai-</i>                       | 233 |
| <i>mama</i>                       | 236 |
| <i>masaka</i> < <i>yahari</i> >   | 538 |
| ~ <i>mashō</i>                    | 240 |
| <i>mettani</i> < <i>amari</i> >   | 72  |
| - <i>mi</i> <- <i>sa</i> >        | 381 |
| <i>mieru</i>                      | 243 |
| <i>mirareru</i> < <i>mieru</i> >  | 243 |
| <i>miru</i>                       | 246 |
| <i>mitaida</i> < <i>yōda</i> >    | 550 |
| <i>mo</i> <sup>1</sup> ‘also’     | 247 |
| <i>mo</i> <sup>2</sup> ‘even’     | 250 |
| <i>mō</i>                         | 254 |
| ~ <i>mo</i> ~ <i>mo</i>           | 255 |

|                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>mon</i> < <i>mono</i> ( <i>da</i> )>                   | 260 |
| <i>mono</i> ( <i>da</i> )                                 | 257 |
| <i>mono</i> < <i>koto</i> <sup>1</sup> >                  | 191 |
| <i>morau</i> <sup>1</sup> ‘receive’                       | 261 |
| <i>morau</i> <sup>2</sup> ‘receive a favor of doing s.t.’ | 263 |
| <i>motte iru</i> < <i>aru</i> <sup>1</sup> >              | 73  |

**N**

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>na</i>                                               | 266 |
| <i>nado</i>                                             | 267 |
| <i>nagara</i>                                           | 269 |
| ~ <i>nai de</i>                                         | 271 |
| ~ <i>nai de</i> <~ <i>kudasai</i> >                     | 209 |
| ~ <i>nai to ikenai</i> <~ <i>nakereba naranai</i> >     | 274 |
| ~ <i>nakereba naranai</i>                               | 274 |
| ~ <i>naku(t)cha</i> <~ <i>nakereba naranai</i> >        | 276 |
| ~ <i>naku naru</i>                                      | 277 |
| ~ <i>nakute</i>                                         | 279 |
| ~ <i>nakute wa ikenai</i> <~ <i>nakereba naranai</i> >  | 274 |
| ~ <i>nakute wa naranai</i> <~ <i>nakereba naranai</i> > | 274 |
| <i>nanka</i> < <i>nado</i> >                            | 267 |
| <i>nara</i>                                             | 281 |
| <i>naru</i> < <i>o</i> ~ <i>ni</i> <i>naru</i> >        | 358 |
| ~ <i>nasai</i>                                          | 284 |
| <i>ne</i>                                               | 286 |
| ~ <i>neba naranai</i> <~ <i>nakereba naranai</i> >      | 274 |
| <i>n da</i> < <i>no da</i> >                            | 325 |
| <i>n desu</i> < <i>no da</i> >                          | 325 |
| <i>ni</i> <sup>1</sup> [point of time]                  | 289 |
| <i>ni</i> <sup>2</sup> [indirect object marker]         | 291 |
| <i>ni</i> <sup>3</sup> [agent / source marker]          | 292 |
| <i>ni</i> <sup>4</sup> [direct contact]                 | 295 |

|                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>ni</i> <sup>5</sup> [purpose] .....                     | 297 |
| <i>ni</i> <sup>6</sup> [location (existence)] .....        | 299 |
| <i>ni</i> <sup>7</sup> [direction] .....                   | 302 |
| <i>ni</i> 'and' < <i>to</i> <sup>1</sup> >.....            | 473 |
| <i>ni chigainai</i> .....                                  | 304 |
| <i>ni kimeru</i> <~ <i>ni suru</i> > .....                 | 310 |
| <i>-nikui</i> .....                                        | 307 |
| ~ <i>ni shite wa</i> .....                                 | 309 |
| ~ <i>ni suru</i> .....                                     | 310 |
| <i>no</i> <sup>1</sup> [possessive marker] .....           | 312 |
| <i>no</i> <sup>2</sup> 'one (pronoun)'.....                | 315 |
| <i>no</i> <sup>3</sup> [nominalizer] .....                 | 318 |
| <i>no</i> <sup>4</sup> [sentence-final particle] .....     | 322 |
| <i>no da</i> .....                                         | 325 |
| <i>node</i> .....                                          | 328 |
| <i>no desu</i> < <i>no da</i> > .....                      | 325 |
| <i>no hō ga</i> <~ <i>hō ga</i> ~ <i>yori</i> > .....      | 140 |
| <i>noni</i> <sup>1</sup> 'even though' .....               | 331 |
| <i>noni</i> <sup>2</sup> 'in the process of doing ~' ..... | 335 |
| <i>no wa</i> ~ <i>da</i> .....                             | 337 |

**O**

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>o-</i> .....                                    | 343 |
| <i>o</i> <sup>1</sup> [direct object marker].....  | 347 |
| <i>o</i> <sup>2</sup> [space marker] .....         | 349 |
| <i>o</i> <sup>3</sup> [a point of detachment]..... | 351 |
| <i>o</i> <sup>4</sup> [emotive marker] .....       | 352 |
| <i>ōi</i> .....                                    | 354 |
| <i>oki ni</i> < <i>goto ni</i> >.....              | 128 |
| <i>oku</i> .....                                   | 357 |
| <i>o</i> ~ <i>ni naru</i> .....                    | 358 |
| <i>o</i> ~ <i>suru</i> .....                       | 360 |
| <i>ō to omou</i> <~ <i>yō to omou</i> >.....       | 569 |
| <i>o tsukatte</i> < <i>de</i> <sup>2</sup> > ..... | 106 |
| ~ <i>owaru</i> .....                               | 362 |
| <i>ōzei</i> < <i>ōi</i> > .....                    | 354 |

**R**

|                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>-ra</i> <- <i>tachi</i> > .....                | 440 |
| <i>rareru</i> <sup>1</sup> [passive] .....        | 364 |
| <i>rareru</i> <sup>2</sup> 'can (potential)'..... | 370 |
| <i>rashii</i> .....                               | 373 |
| Relative Clause .....                             | 376 |
| <i>reru</i> < <i>rareru</i> <sup>1</sup> > .....  | 364 |

**S**

|                                                                     |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| <i>-sa</i> .....                                                    | 381      |
| <i>-sama</i> .....                                                  | 384      |
| <i>-san</i> <- <i>sama</i> > .....                                  | 384      |
| <i>sappari</i> < <i>amari</i> > .....                               | 72       |
| <i>saserareru</i> < <i>saseru</i> <sup>1</sup> > .....              | 392      |
| <i>saseru</i> .....                                                 | 387      |
| <i>sashiageru</i> < <i>ageru</i> <sup>1</sup> >.....                | 64       |
| <i>sasuga</i> ( <i>ni</i> ) < <i>yahari</i> > .....                 | 538      |
| <i>sekkaku</i> .....                                                | 392      |
| <i>seru</i> < <i>saseru</i> > .....                                 | 387      |
| <i>shi</i> .....                                                    | 395      |
| <i>-shi-</i> .....                                                  | 397      |
| <i>shika</i> .....                                                  | 398      |
| <i>shikashi</i> < <i>ga</i> <sup>2</sup> , <i>kawari ni</i> > ..... | 120, 184 |
| <i>shikata ga nai</i> < <i>tamaranai</i> >.....                     | 445      |
| <i>shimau</i> .....                                                 | 403      |
| <i>shiru</i> .....                                                  | 406      |
| <i>sōda</i> <sup>1</sup> [hearsay] .....                            | 407      |
| ~ <i>sōda</i> <sup>2</sup> 'looks' .....                            | 410      |
| <i>sore de</i> .....                                                | 413      |
| <i>sore de wa</i> .....                                             | 414      |
| <i>sore kara</i> .....                                              | 416      |
| <i>sore nara</i> .....                                              | 419      |
| <i>soretomo</i> .....                                               | 421      |
| <i>soshite</i> .....                                                | 422      |
| <i>sugiru</i> .....                                                 | 423      |
| <i>sukida</i> .....                                                 | 426      |
| <i>sukoshimo</i> < <i>amari</i> > .....                             | 72       |

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>sukunai</i>                          | 427 |
| <i>suru</i> <sup>1</sup> ‘do, play’     | 428 |
| <i>suru</i> <sup>2</sup> ‘have’         | 434 |
| <i>suru</i> <sup>3</sup> [sensation]    | 435 |
| <i>suru</i> <sup>4</sup> ‘cost / lapse’ | 436 |
| <i>suru</i> < <i>o ~ suru</i> (humble)> | 360 |
| <i>suru to</i>                          | 437 |

**T**

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| - <i>tachi</i>                                     | 440 |
| - <i>tai</i>                                       | 441 |
| <i>takusan</i> < <i>ōi</i> >                       | 354 |
| <i>tamaranai</i>                                   | 445 |
| <i>tame</i> ( <i>ni</i> )                          | 447 |
| ~ <i>tara</i>                                      | 452 |
| ~ <i>tara dō desu ka</i>                           | 457 |
| ~ <i>tari ~tari suru</i>                           | 458 |
| - <i>tatte</i>                                     | 461 |
| - <i>te</i>                                        | 464 |
| - <i>te</i> <~ <i>kudasai</i> >                    | 209 |
| <i>te ageru</i> < <i>ageru</i> <sup>2</sup> >      | 65  |
| <i>te aru</i> < <i>aru</i> <sup>2</sup> >          | 76  |
| <i>te hoshii</i> < <i>hoshii</i> <sup>2</sup> >    | 146 |
| <i>te iru</i> < <i>iru</i> <sup>2</sup> >          | 155 |
| <i>te itadaku</i> < <i>morau</i> <sup>2</sup> >    | 265 |
| <i>te kara</i> < <i>kara</i> <sup>2</sup> >        | 177 |
| <i>te kudasai</i> <~ <i>kudasai</i> >              | 209 |
| <i>te kudasaru</i> < <i>kureru</i> <sup>2</sup> >  | 218 |
| <i>te kureru</i> < <i>kureru</i> <sup>2</sup> >    | 216 |
| <i>te miru</i> < <i>miru</i> >                     | 246 |
| <i>te mo</i>                                       | 468 |
| ~ <i>te mo ii</i>                                  | 471 |
| <i>te moraitai</i> < <i>hoshii</i> <sup>2</sup> >  | 147 |
| <i>te morau</i> < <i>morau</i> <sup>2</sup> >      | 263 |
| <i>te ne</i> < <i>ne</i> >                         | 288 |
| <i>te oku</i> < <i>oku</i> >                       | 357 |
| <i>te sashiageru</i> < <i>ageru</i> <sup>2</sup> > | 67  |
| <i>te shikata ga nai</i> < <i>tamaranai</i> >      | 447 |

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>te shimau</i> < <i>shimau</i> >           | 403 |
| <i>te tamaranai</i> < <i>tamaranai</i> >     | 446 |
| <i>te wa ikenai</i> <~ <i>wa ikenai</i> >    | 528 |
| <i>te wa naranai</i> <~ <i>wa ikenai</i> >   | 528 |
| <i>te yaru</i> < <i>ageru</i> <sup>2</sup> > | 67  |
| <i>te yokatta</i> < <i>ba yokatta</i> >      | 89  |
| <i>to</i> <sup>1</sup> ‘and’                 | 473 |
| <i>to</i> <sup>2</sup> ‘with’                | 476 |
| <i>to</i> <sup>3</sup> [quote marker]        | 478 |
| <i>to</i> <sup>4</sup> ‘if, when’            | 480 |
| ~ <i>to ieba</i>                             | 484 |
| <i>to ittara</i> <~ <i>to ieba</i> >         | 485 |
| ~ <i>to iu</i>                               | 486 |
| <i>toka</i>                                  | 488 |
| <i>toki</i>                                  | 490 |
| <i>to kitara</i> <~ <i>to ieba</i> >         | 485 |
| <i>tokoro da</i> <sup>1</sup> ‘place’        | 495 |
| <i>tokoro da</i> <sup>2</sup> ‘moment’       | 496 |
| <i>toku</i> < <i>oku</i> >                   | 358 |
| ~ <i>to shite</i>                            | 501 |
| ~ <i>to shite wa</i>                         | 502 |
| <i>tsumori</i>                               | 503 |
| <i>ttara</i> <~ <i>to ieba</i> >             | 484 |
| - <i>tte</i> <sup>1</sup> ‘speaking of’      | 507 |
| - <i>tte</i> <sup>2</sup> [quote marker]     | 510 |

**U**

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>uchi ni</i>                     | 512 |
| <i>ushiro ni</i> < <i>mae ni</i> > | 231 |

**W**

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>wa</i> <sup>1</sup> [theme]                | 516 |
| <i>wa</i> <sup>2</sup> [female speech marker] | 520 |
| ~ <i>wa ~da</i>                               | 521 |
| ~ <i>wa ~desu</i> <~ <i>wa ~da</i> >          | 521 |
| ~ <i>wa ~ga</i>                               | 525 |
| ~ <i>wa ikenai</i>                            | 528 |
| <i>wakaru</i>                                 | 529 |

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| wake da .....                  | 531 |
| ~wa naranai <~wa ikenai> ..... | 528 |
| wazawaza <sekkaku> .....       | 392 |
| wazuka <sukunai> .....         | 427 |

**Y**

|                                                      |         |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| -ya 'store' .....                                    | 535     |
| ya 'and' .....                                       | 536     |
| yahari .....                                         | 538     |
| yappari <yahari> .....                               | 539     |
| yaru <ageru <sup>1</sup> , suru <sup>1</sup> > ..... | 64, 428 |
| -yasui .....                                         | 541     |
| yo .....                                             | 543     |
| yōda .....                                           | 547     |
| yo ne <ne> .....                                     | 288     |

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| yōni <sup>1</sup> 'so that ~' ..... | 553 |
| yōni <sup>2</sup> 'like' .....      | 554 |
| ~yōni iu .....                      | 556 |
| ~yōni naru .....                    | 559 |
| ~yōni suru .....                    | 562 |
| yorī <sup>1</sup> 'than' .....      | 564 |
| yorī <sup>2</sup> 'side' .....      | 567 |
| ~yō to omou .....                   | 569 |
| ~yō to suru <miru> .....            | 246 |

**Z**

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| zenzen <amari> .....   | 72  |
| ~zu ni <~nai de> ..... | 271 |
| zutsu .....            | 572 |

## REFERENCES

- Alfonso, Anthony (1966) *Japanese Language Patterns—a structural approach*, Volume I & II, Sophia University L.L. Center of Applied Linguistics, Tokyo.
- Asano, Tsuruko, et al. (eds.) (1971) *Gaikokujin no Tame no Kihongo Yōrei Jiten* (Dictionary of Basic Japanese Usage for Foreigners), Bunkachō, Tokyo.
- Butler, Kenneth D., et al. (eds.) (1975) *Basic Japanese—A Review Text*, Inter-University Center for Japanese Language Studies, Tokyo.
- Endō, Mutsuko Simon (1984) *A Practical Guide for Teachers of Elementary Japanese*, Center for Japanese Studies, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan.
- Hinds, John and Irwin Howard (eds.) (1978) *Problems in Japanese Syntax and Semantics*, Kaitakusha, Tokyo.
- Inoue, Kazuko (1976) *Henkei Bunpō to Nihongo* (Transformational Grammar and the Japanese Language), Taishūkan, Tokyo.
- Inoue, Kazuko (1978) *Nihongo no Bunpō Kisoku* (Japanese Grammatical Rules), Taishūkan, Tokyo.
- Jorden, Eleanor Harz (1963) *Beginning Japanese*, Part 1 & 2, Yale University Press, New Haven, Connecticut.
- Kitagawa, Chisato (1983) "On the Two Forms of Negative Gerund in Japanese," A paper read on March 27, 1983 at the Annual Convention of the Association of Asian Studies, San Francisco.
- Kubota, Tomio and Ikeo, Sumi (1971) *Taigūhyōgen* (Polite Expressions), Bunkachō, Tokyo.
- Kuno, Susumu (1973) *The Structure of the Japanese Language*, MIT Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts.
- Kuno, Susumu (1973) *Nihonbunpō Kenkyū* (A Study of Japanese Grammar), Taishūkan, Tokyo.
- Kuno, Susumu (1978) *Danwa no Bunpō* (Discourse Grammar), Taishūkan, Tokyo.
- Kuno, Susumu (1983) *Shin Nihonbunpō Kenkyū* (New Study of Japanese Grammar), Taishūkan, Tokyo.
- Makino, Seiichi (1978) *Kotoba to Kūkan* (Language and Space), Tōkai University Press, Tokyo.
- Makino, Seiichi (ed.) (1981) *Papers from the Middlebury Symposium on Japanese Discourse Analysis*, University of Illinois, Urbana, Illinois.
- Makino, Seiichi (1983) "Speaker / Listener-Orientation and Formality Marking in Japanese," *Gengo Kenkyū—the Journal of the Linguistic Society of Japan*, 84, 126-145, Taishūkan, Tokyo.

- Martin, Samuel (1975) *A Reference Grammar of Japanese*, Yale University Press, New Haven, Connecticut.
- McClain, Yōko Matsuoka (1981) *Handbook of Modern Japanese Grammar*, Hokuseidō, Tokyo.
- McGloin, Naomi Hanaoka (1980) "Some Observations Concerning No Desu," *Journal of the Association of Teachers of Japanese*, 15: 2, 117-149.
- Mikami, Akira (1960) *Zō wa hana ga nagai* (An elephant has a long trunk), Kuroshio Shuppan, Tokyo.
- Mikami, Akira (1970) *Bunpō Shōron Shū* (Papers on Grammar), Kuroshio Shuppan, Tokyo.
- Mikami, Akira (1972) *Gendai Gohō Josetsu* (Introduction to Modern Japanese Usage), Kuroshio Shuppan, Tokyo.
- Miura, Akira (1983) *Japanese Words and Their Uses*, Tuttle, Rutland, Vermont.
- Monane, Tazuko Ajiro (1981) Review of McClain (1981), *Journal of Association of Teachers of Japanese*, 16: 2, 200-207.
- Morita, Yoshiyuki (1977, 1980, 1984) *Kiso Nihongo* (Basic Japanese Words), 1, 2 & 3, Kadokawa Shoten, Tokyo.
- Morita, Yoshiyuki (1981) *Nihongo no Hassō* (Meanings of Japanese Words), Tōjusha, Tokyo.
- Nagara, Susumu (1975), "Teaching Basic Sentence Constructions in Japanese: the transition from fundamental grammatical drills to intermediate reading," *Journal of the Association of Teachers of Japanese*, 10: 2-3, 131-143.
- Ogawa, Yoshio, et al. (eds.) (1982) *Nihongo Kyōiku Jiten* (Dictionary of Pedagogy of Japanese), Taishūkan, Tokyo.
- Okutsu, Keiichirō (1978) 'Boku wa unagi da' no *Bunpō* (Grammar of 'Boku wa unagi da'), Kuroshio Shuppan, Tokyo.
- Ōno, Susumu, et al. (eds.) (1974) *Iwanami Kogo Jiten* (Iwanami's Dictionary of Old Japanese), Iwanami Shoten, Tokyo.
- Ōno, Susumu, et al. (eds.) (1981) *Kadokawa Ruigo Shin Jiten* (Kadokawa's New Dictionary of Synonyms), Kadokawa Shoten, Tokyo.
- Sakuma, Katsuhiko and Motofuji, Frank T. (1980) *Advanced Spoken Japanese: Tonari no Shibafu*, Institute of East Asian Studies, University of California, Berkeley, California.
- Shibatani, Masayoshi (ed.) (1976) *Syntax and Semantics 5: Japanese Generative Grammar*, Academic Press, New York and San Francisco.
- Shibatani, Masayoshi (1978) *Nihongo no Bunseki* (Analyses of Japanese), Taishūkan, Tokyo.
- Soga, Matsuo and Matsumoto, Noriko (1978) *Foundations of Japanese Language*, Taishūkan, Tokyo.
- Soga, Matsuo (1983) *Tense and Aspect in Modern Colloquial Japanese*, University of British Columbia Press, Vancouver, Canada.

- Suleski, Ronald and Masada, Hiroko (1982) *Affective Expressions in Japanese*, Hokuseidō, Tokyo.
- Suzuki, Shinobu (1978) *Kyōshiyō Nihongo Kyōiku Handobukku 3, Bunpō 1, Joshi no Shomondai* (A Handbook for Japanese Language Teachers 3, Grammar 1, Problems of Particles), The Japan Foundation, Tokyo.
- Tsutsui, Michio (1981) "Ellipsis of *wa* in Japanese," in Makino (1981), 295-319.
- Tsutsui, Michio (1984) "Particle Ellipses in Japanese," unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign.
- Yoshikawa, Taketoki, et al. (1983) *Kyōkasho Kaidai* (Bibliography of Japanese Textbooks), *Kyōshiyō Nihongo Kyōiku Handobukku Bessatsu* (Special Issue for a series of Handbooks for Japanese Language Teachers), The Japan Foundation, Tokyo.